

# 1. Guide d'encodage de l'édition du *de uerbo* glosé d' Eutychès Gramaticus d'après le manuscrit Leiden, Vossianus Latinus O.41

Ce petit guide a pour but d'expliquer de quelle manière a été encodée en XML-TEI l'édition. Le corpus numérique est constitué d'un fichier XML TEI qui comprend les 64 premier feuillets (33 folios), à savoir la deuxième unité codicologique du codex. Le fichier de l'édition documentaire s'appelle VLO41\_TEI\_edition.xml

## 1.1. Structurer le *teiheader*

Le `<teiHeader>` comporte deux sections :

- **fileDesc** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- **encodingDesc** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

### 1.1.1. Le *fileDesc*

Le `<fileDesc>` comporte lui-même :

- **titleStmt** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- **publicationStmt** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- **sourceDesc** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

Le `<sourceDesc>` contient toutes les informations nécessaires sur le manuscrit de base, Voss.Lat.O41. L'ensemble des données sont contenues dans un `<msDesc>`

```
<msDesc xml:id="VLO41">
  <!-- On identifie le manuscrit-->
  <msIdentifier>
    <country>Belgique</country>
    <repository>Leiden,Universitätsbibliothek</repository>
    <idno>Ms. Voss.Lat.O.41</idno>
    <altIdentifier>
      <idno>F.40</idno>
      <note>Ancienne cote;Le manuscrit appartenait auparavant à Paul Petau.
        Marque de possession : ex-libris avec la devise grecque <quote type="ex_libris">### ####, #### #####</quote> au folio 2r en
        marge en bas</note>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msIdentifier>
</msDesc> [...]
<msItemStruct n="2">
  <locus from="2r" to="33r">f.2r-33r</locus>
  <author>Eutyches Grammaticus</author>
  <title>Cantilène de sainte Eulalie</title>
  <incipit>liber eutici//grammatici de verbo: Cum semper nous
    quaestiones...</incipit>
  <explicit>Explicit liber Euticis</explicit>
  <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItemStruct>
```

Le `<sourceDesc>` contient aussi un `<objectDesc>` qui comporte `<physDesc>` qui permet la description codicologique du manuscrit, un `<layoutDesc>` qui permet la description de la disposition du texte sur le folio, important surtout pour les indications du passage des longues lignes en colonnes irrégulières et vice versa, et un `<handDesc>`, lui-même essentiel pour les informations concernant les mains différentes des copistes et des glossateurs.

```
<handDesc hands="9">
  <handNote xml:id="M1">
    <locus from="2r" to="22r">2r-22r ligne 4</locus>
    <date when-iso="875/900">9th century, 4/4</date>
  </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="M2">
    <locus from="22r" to="28r">22r ligne 4- 28r</locus>
    <date when-iso="875/900">9th century, 4/4</date>
  </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="M3">
    <locus from="28v" to="30r">28v - 30r ligne 14</locus>
    <date when-iso="875/900">9th century, 4/4</date>Constitue aussi une des
    mais des glossateurs </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="M4">
    <locus from="30r" to="33r">30r ligne 14- 33r ligne 12</locus>
    <date when-iso="875/900">9th century, 4/4</date>
  </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="m0">
    <date when-iso="875/900">9th century, 4/4</date> corrections
    contemporaines par la main qui copie le texte</handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="A">
    <date when-iso="900/1000">10th century</date> Les indications concernent
    le temps et non pas l'importance de la main. Main A qui a glosé le
    manuscrit en un premier temps = premier mouvement = T1. Souvent l'encre
    est estompée, et les glosses de cette main corrigées/suppléées/repassées. </handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="AB">
```

```

<date when-iso="900/1000">10th century</date> Main AB
qui a glosé le manuscrit, et se trouve entre le premier et le deuxième
main. Reste encore d'élucider la relation de cette main avec celle qui
précède et celles qui suivent. Indice "post quem" folio 6r ligne 8,
lemma:sacrifico, glose "libo" appartenant à la première main et glose
superposée "aliga oblatio". folio 6r, ligne 16,18,20, les gloses de la
main AB précèdent celles de la main B </handNote>
<handNote xml:id="B">
<date when-iso="900/1000">10th century</date> Main B
qui a glosé le manuscrit en un deuxième temps = deuxième mouvement = T2 </handNote>
<handNote xml:id="C">
<date when-iso="900/1000">10th century</date> Troisième
mouvement = T3. Cette main a aussi laissé plusieurs notae et des petits
points entre les mots. Potentiellement a utilisé le codex pour enseigner,
comme les notae "s= scribe", "d= dimitte" et des trigons=signes
d'attention indiquent </handNote> [...]
</handDesc>

```

Etant donnée que le manuscrit est écrit par 4 mains principales successives, un élément `<handShift>` a été aussi prévu pour signaler le changement des mains au fur et à mesure

```

<pb n="28r"/>
<handShift resp="#M2"/>
<lb type="principal" break="no"/> item tero teris detero protero; Item
sero is, et qu# exeo com
[...]

```

#### 1.1.1.1. L'encodingDesc

L'élément `<encodingDesc>` permet de donner des informations sur l'encodage du fichier XML. Dans notre cas, il a permis de déclarer les choix éditoriaux et les interventions philologiques.

```

<correction>
<p>Aucun changement n'a été fait sur les graphies proposées dans le
manuscrit. Le punctus elevatus qui a été transcrit comme point virgule
";". En ce qui concerne l'espacement, les espaces ont été restituées
notamment dans les 2 premiers feuillets où l'écriture est semi
continua. </p>
</correction>
<hyphenation>
<p>Le manuscrit ne propose pas de tirets de coupure de mot en de fin de
ligne et aucune intervention a été faite. un attribut break="no" a été
rajouté pour spécifier les lignes qui se coupent en deux</p>
</hyphenation>

```

#### 1.1.1.1. Encodage de la mise en page du manuscrit

Afin de pouvoir produire à terme une vue facsimilaire de l'édition, des informations sur la disposition du texte dans VossLatO41 ont été encodées en utilisant les balises suivantes :

- **ab** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.
- **pb** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.
- **cb** (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page.
- **lb** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

La totalité du texte a été mise dans une balise `<ab>` qui l'englobe. Ce choix, contre une division sémantique en chapitres ou unités de sens est délibérément mise en place afin de ne pas imposer des sections arbitraires sur un texte dont la division ne s'éteint pas au delà de la division de base en deux livres et dont l'éditeur n'a pas examiné la totalité des témoins. Chaque saut de page est indiqué avec élément `<pb>` qui contient, grâce à l'attribut `n`, le numéro du folio. L'indication recto ou verso est bien rajoutée même si elle ne fait pas partie de la foliotation originale du manuscrit qui se contente à la numérotation des rectos

```

<pb n="02r"/> />

```

Le contenu du manuscrit impose d'emblée une mise en page spécifique en lignes, interlignes et notes marginales. L'unité principale de division de la page est la ligne `<lb>` qui contient des valeurs qui dénotent leur caractère *principal* et *interlinear*. Cette classification est indispensable, afin de distinguer entre les lignes qui portent le texte principal et les lignes qui portent des gloses interlinéaires. Les lignes principales elle mêmes sont porteurs des lemmes, encodés grâce à l'élément `<seg>` de *type* custom lemma, doté d'un `xml:id` composé du numéro de folio, de la ligne, et de l'ordre d'apparition sur la ligne.

```

<lb type="principal"/> rens sibi nomen <seg type="lemma" xml:id="f04v_l17">omnib; modis</seg> et ultra duas syllabas

```

Les interlignes portent par défaut des gloses. Par défaut, une ligne porte la totalité des gloses afférant à un lemme. Elles sont encodées de la façon suivante: L'élément `<gloss>` suivi par plusieurs attributs dont *type* porte le type de glose, p.ex S22= variante simple, un attribut `xml:id` et un attribut `resp` qui lie la glose au lemme correspondant. Une ligne interlinéaire peut contenir deux gloses afférant à un seul lemme et sont encodés ainsi:

```

<gloss type="S22" xml:id="f04v_c1_l01_a"
target="#f04v_c1_l01" resp="#A"> circumeo</gloss> .
<gloss type="S22" xml:id="f04v_c1_l01_b"
target="#f04v_c1_l01" resp="#C">cupio.</gloss>

```

Des commentaires en marge, -qui s'étalent parfois en plusieurs lignes- accompagnent la lecture du texte. Des éléments `<fw>` de *type* marginal\_note sont mis en place pour désigner les notes marginales, Des attributs `xml:id` et `corresp` sont également présents pour faciliter l'attribution des notes à une main spécifique.



	<pre>         &lt;p&gt;No source: this is an original work.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;text&gt;     &lt;body&gt;       &lt;p&gt;This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/body&gt;   &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"&gt;   &lt;teiHeader&gt;     &lt;fileDesc&gt;       &lt;titleStmt&gt;         &lt;title&gt;A TEI Document containing four page images &lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/titleStmt&gt;       &lt;publicationStmt&gt;         &lt;p&gt;Unpublished demonstration file.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;       &lt;sourceDesc&gt;         &lt;p&gt;No source: this is an original work.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;/sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;/teiHeader&gt;   &lt;facsimile&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page1.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page2.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page3.png"/&gt;     &lt;graphic url="page4.png"/&gt;   &lt;/facsimile&gt; &lt;/TEI&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/&gt; &lt;sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="teiHeader"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.resource"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"           maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element TEI {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* )   TEI+ ) ) } </pre>

## 2.1.2. <ab>

**<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

<b>Module</b>	linking
---------------	---------

<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (@type) <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.fragmentable</a> (@part) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.pLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">publicationStmnt</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	The <code>&lt;ab&gt;</code> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;div type="book" n="Genesis"&gt;   &lt;div type="chapter" n="1"&gt;     &lt;ab&gt;In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.&lt;/ab&gt;     &lt;ab&gt;And the earth was without form, and void; and       darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the       spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.&lt;/ab&gt;     &lt;ab&gt;And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.&lt;/ab&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/div&gt; &lt;/div&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum  parent::tei:item  parent::tei:note  parent::tei:q  parent::tei:quote  parent::tei:remarks  parent::tei:said  parent::tei:sp  parent::tei:stage  parent::tei:cell  parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: ab may not occur inside paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report>
<b>Schematron</b>	<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(parent::tei:figure or parent::tei:note or ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab, unless ab is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floating-Text. </s:report>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element ab {   att.global.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.fragmentable.attributes,   att.written.attributes,   macro.paraContent } </pre>

### 2.1.3. <altIdentifier>

<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript or other object, such as a former catalogue number. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
<b>Module</b>	<a href="#">msdescription</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a>

	(@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>msIdentifier</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>note</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>repository</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u>
<b>Note</b>	An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;altIdentifier&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;San Marino&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;repository&gt;Huntington Library&lt;/repository&gt;   &lt;idno&gt;MS.El.26.C.9&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;/altIdentifier&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.placeNamePart"       expand="sequenceOptional"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="institution"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="repository"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="collection"       minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element altIdentifier {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   ( country?, institution?, repository?, collection?, idno, note? ) } </pre>

## 2.1.4. <author>

<b>&lt;author&gt;</b> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>

Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Note	<p>Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes <i>key</i> or <i>ref</i> may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.</p> <p>In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.</p> <p>Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as <i>Unknown</i> or <i>Anonymous</i>. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.</p>
Example	<pre> &lt;author&gt;British Broadcasting Corporation&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634-1693)&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;Anonymous&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation&lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Beaumont, Francis&lt;/persName&gt; and   &lt;persName&gt;John Fletcher&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/author&gt; &lt;author&gt;   &lt;orgName key="BBC"&gt;British Broadcasting     Corporation&lt;/orgName&gt;: Radio 3 Network &lt;/author&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element author {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dateable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.5. <authority>

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header
--------	--------

<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>publicationStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;authority&gt;John Smith&lt;/authority&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element authority {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

### 2.1.6. <availability>

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)  status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u>  <b>Legal values free are:</b>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>publicationStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>header:</b> <u>licence</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u>



<b>Note</b>	A consistent format should be adopted
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;availability status="restricted"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available for academic research purposes only.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;availability status="free"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;In the public domain&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;availability status="restricted"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available under licence from the publishers.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;availability&gt;   &lt;licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The MIT License       applies to this document.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy       of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal       in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights       to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell       copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is       furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in       all copies or substantial portions of the Software.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR       IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,       FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE       AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER       LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,       OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN       THE SOFTWARE.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/licence&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element availability {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declarable.attributes,   attribute status { "free" }?,   ( model.availabilityPart   model.pLike )+ } </pre>

### 2.1.7. <bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.docStatus</u> (@status) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p>

	<p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> article book catalogue</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblLike</a> <a href="#">model.biblPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	Contains <i>phrase-level</i> elements, together with any combination of elements from the <a href="#">model.biblPart</a> class
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bibl&gt;Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) &lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bibl&gt; &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt;. In &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;. &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt; &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003"&gt; &lt;author&gt; &lt;name&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Carlin&lt;/surname&gt; (&lt;forename&gt;Claire&lt;/forename&gt;) &lt;/name&gt; &lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Staging of Impotence : France's last congrès&lt;/title&gt; dans &lt;bibl type="monogr"&gt; &lt;title level="m"&gt;Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W. Tobin&lt;/title&gt;, éd. &lt;editor&gt; &lt;name&gt; &lt;forename&gt;Claire&lt;/forename&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Carlin&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/name&gt; &lt;/editor&gt; et &lt;editor&gt; &lt;name&gt; &lt;forename&gt;Kathleen&lt;/forename&gt; &lt;surname&gt;Wine&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/name&gt; &lt;/editor&gt;, &lt;pubPlace&gt;Charlottesville, Va.&lt;/pubPlace&gt;, &lt;publisher&gt;Rookwood Press&lt;/publisher&gt;, &lt;date when="2003"&gt;2003&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.highlighted"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.data"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.segLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.ptrLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.biblPart"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element bibl {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declarable.attributes,   att.sortable.attributes,   att.docStatus.attributes,   attribute type { "article"   "book"   "catalogue" }?,   (     text       model.gLike       model.highlighted       model.pPart.data       model.pPart.edit       model.segLike       model.ptrLike       model.biblPart       model.global   ) * } </pre>

### 2.1.8. <biblScope>

<b>&lt;biblScope&gt;</b> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.citing</u> (unit, @from, @to)</p> <p><b>unit</b> identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> att.citing</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> page</p> <p><b>are:</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.imprintPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	core: <u>bibl</u>
<b>May contain</b>	core: <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> header: <u>idno</u>

	<b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>When a single page is being cited, use the <i>from</i> and <i>to</i> attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the <i>from</i> attribute may be used without <i>to</i>; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded <code>&lt;biblScope from="3"&gt;p. 3ff&lt;/biblScope&gt;</code>.</p> <p>It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <code>&lt;imprint&gt;</code>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;biblScope&gt;pp 12-34&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/&gt; &lt;biblScope unit="volume"&gt;II&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;biblScope unit="page"&gt;12&lt;/biblScope&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element biblScope {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.citing.attribute.from,   att.citing.attribute.to,   attribute unit { "page" }?,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.9. <bindingDesc>

<b>&lt;bindingDesc&gt;</b> (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript or other object, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <code>&lt;binding&gt;</code> elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]	
<b>Module</b>	<code>msdescription</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <code>att.global</code> ( <code>@xml:id</code> , <code>@n</code> , <code>@xml:lang</code> , <code>@xml:base</code> , <code>@xml:space</code> ) <code>att.global.rendition</code> ( <code>@rend</code> , <code>@style</code> , <code>@rendition</code> ) <code>att.global.linking</code> ( <code>@corresp</code> , <code>@synch</code> , <code>@sameAs</code> , <code>@copyOf</code> , <code>@next</code> , <code>@prev</code> , <code>@exclude</code> , <code>@select</code> ) <code>att.global.change</code> ( <code>@change</code> ) <code>att.global.source</code> ( <code>@source</code> )
<b>Member of</b>	<code>model.physDescPart</code>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <code>physDesc</code>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <code>p</code> <b>linking:</b> <code>ab</code>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;bindingDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over   19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with   gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each   cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in   gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the   spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured   endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/bindingDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="decoNote"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="condition"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="binding" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element bindingDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( ( model.pLike   decoNote   condition )+   binding+ ) } </pre>

## 2.1.10. <body>

<b>&lt;body&gt;</b> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
<b>Module</b>	textstructure
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">text</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;body&gt; &lt;1&gt;Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;metudæs maecti end his modgidanc&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;eci dryctin or astelidæ&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;he aerist scop aelda barnum&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;heben til hrofe haleg scepen.&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;tha middungeard moncynnæs uard&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;eci dryctin æfter tiadæ&lt;/1&gt; &lt;1&gt;firum foldu frea allmectig&lt;/1&gt; &lt;trailer&gt;primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.&lt;/trailer&gt; &lt;/body&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.divTop"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" </pre>

	<pre> maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.div1Like"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.common"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.global"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.divLike"/&gt;         &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"           maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;           &lt;/alternate&gt;         &lt;/sequence&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.div1Like"/&gt;         &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"           maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;             &lt;classRef key="model.divGenLike"/&gt;           &lt;/alternate&gt;         &lt;/sequence&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divBottom"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element body {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declaring.attributes,   (     model.global*,     ( model.divTop, ( model.global   model.divTop )* )?,     ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )?,     ( </pre>

	<pre> ( model.divLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike ) * )+   ( model.div1Like, ( model.global   model.divGenLike ) * )+   (   ( model.common, model.global* )+,   (     ( model.divLike, ( model.global   model.divGenLike ) * )+       ( model.div1Like, ( model.global   model.divGenLike ) * )+   )? ), ( model.divBottom, model.global* ) * ) } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.11. <cb>

<b>&lt;cb&gt;</b> (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (@type) <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">text</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	On this element, the global <i>n</i> attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.
<b>Example</b>	<p>Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:</p> <pre> &lt;pb/&gt; &lt;cb n="1"/&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;   &lt;form&gt;Well&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;a Pit to hold Spring-Water&lt;/sense&gt;:   &lt;sense&gt;In the Art of &lt;hi rend="italic"&gt;War&lt;/hi&gt;, a Depth the Miner     sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,     or to prepare one&lt;/sense&gt;. &lt;/entryFree&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;To &lt;form&gt;Welter&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;to wallow&lt;/sense&gt;, or &lt;sense&gt;lie groveling&lt;/sense&gt;.&lt;/entryFree&gt; &lt;!-- remainder of column --&gt; &lt;cb n="2"/&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;   &lt;form&gt;Wey&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;the greatest Measure for dry Things,     containing five Chaldron&lt;/sense&gt;. &lt;/entryFree&gt; &lt;entryFree&gt;   &lt;form&gt;Whale&lt;/form&gt;, &lt;sense&gt;the greatest of     Sea-Fishes&lt;/sense&gt;. &lt;/entryFree&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element cb {   att.global.attributes, </pre>

	<pre> att.typed.attributes, att.edition.attributes, att.spanning.attributes, att.breaking.attributes, empty } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.12. <change>

<b>&lt;change&gt;</b> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.ascribed</u> (@who) <u>att.docStatus</u> (@status) <u>att.data-ble.w3c</u> (@when) <u>att.data-ble.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>revisionDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	The <i>who</i> attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <u>&lt;respStmnt&gt;</u> or <u>&lt;person&gt;</u> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The <i>status</i> attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;titleStmnt&gt; &lt;title&gt; ... &lt;/title&gt; &lt;editor xml:id="LDB"&gt;Lou Burnard&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;respStmnt xml:id="BZ"&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;copy editing&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Brett Zamir&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmnt&gt; &lt;/titleStmnt&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;revisionDesc status="published"&gt;   &lt;change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02"     status="public"&gt;Finished chapter 23&lt;/change&gt;   &lt;change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02"     status="draft"&gt;Finished chapter 2&lt;/change&gt;   &lt;change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"     who="#LDB"&gt;Added examples to section 3&lt;/change&gt;   &lt;change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM"&gt;Deleted chapter 10&lt;/change&gt; &lt;/revisionDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;profileDesc&gt;   &lt;creation&gt;     &lt;listChange&gt;       &lt;change xml:id="DRAFT1"&gt;First draft in pencil&lt;/change&gt;       &lt;change xml:id="DRAFT2"         notBefore="1880-12-09"&gt;First revision, mostly         using green ink&lt;/change&gt;       &lt;change xml:id="DRAFT3"         notBefore="1881-02-13"&gt;Final corrections as         supplied to printer.&lt;/change&gt;     &lt;/listChange&gt;   &lt;/creation&gt; &lt;/profileDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element change {   att.ascribed.attributes,   att.data-ble.w3c.attribute.when,   att.data-ble.custom.attribute.when-custom, </pre>



	<pre> att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, att.docStatus.attributes, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, macro.specialPara </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.13. <correction>

<p><b>&lt;correction&gt;</b> (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.editorialDeclPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>editorialDecl</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u>
<b>Note</b>	May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;correction&gt; &lt;p&gt;Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century Dictionary.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/correction&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element correction {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source, </pre>

	<pre> att.declarable.attributes, model.pLike+ } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.14. <country>

<b>&lt;country&gt;</b> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;country key="DK"&gt;Denmark&lt;/country&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element country {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.15. <date>

<p>&lt;date&gt; (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.4. Dates]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence, @instant) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso) <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.dateLike</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date when="1980-02"&gt;early February 1980&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<p>Given on the <code>&lt;date when="1977-06-12"&gt;Twelfth Day</code>  of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic  the Two Hundredeth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.<code>&lt;/date&gt;</code></p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date when="1990-09"&gt;September 1990&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element date {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source, </pre>

	<pre> att.dateable.iso.attribute.when-iso, att.dateable.custom.attribute.when-custom, att.dateable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.dateable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.dateable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.dateable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.dateable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.dateable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, att.editLike.attributes, att.ranging.attribute.atLeast, att.ranging.attribute.atMost, att.ranging.attribute.min, att.ranging.attribute.max, att.ranging.attribute.confidence, ( text   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.global ) * } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.16. <editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.naming</u> ( <u>att.canonical</u> (@ref)) <u>att.dateable</u> ( <u>att.dateable.w3c</u> (@when)) ( <u>att.dateable.iso</u> (@when-iso)) ( <u>att.dateable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;editor role="Technical_Editor"&gt;Ron Van den Branden&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;editor role="Editor-in-Chief"&gt;John Walsh&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;editor role="Managing_Editor"&gt;Anne Baillot&lt;/editor&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element editor {   att.global.attributes,   att.naming.attributes,   att.dateable.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.17. <editorialDecl>

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corre-

	sp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Member of	<a href="#">model.encodingDescPart</a>
Contained by	header: <a href="#">encodingDesc</a>
May contain	core: p header: <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> linking: <a href="#">ab</a>
Example	<pre>&lt;editorialDecl&gt;   &lt;normalization&gt;     &lt;p&gt;All words converted to Modern American spelling using       Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary     &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/normalization&gt;   &lt;quotation marks="all"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing       quotation marks converted to &amp;amp;cdq;.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/quotation&gt; &lt;/editorialDecl&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element editorialDecl {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declarable.attributes,   ( model.pLike   model.editorialDeclPart )+ }</pre>

## 2.1.18. <encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Member of	<a href="#">model.teiHeaderPart</a>
Contained by	header: <a href="#">teiHeader</a>
May contain	core: p header: <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> linking: <a href="#">ab</a>
Example	<pre>&lt;encodingDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All     hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No     formatting or layout information preserved.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt;</pre>

<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element encodingDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.encodingDescPart   model.pLike )+ } </pre>

## 2.1.19. <explicit>

<explicit> (explicit) contains the <i>explicit</i> of a item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.msExcerpt</u> (@defective) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msItemStruct</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;explicit&gt;sed libera nos a malo.&lt;/explicit&gt; &lt;rubric&gt;Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.&lt;/rubric&gt; &lt;explicit type="defective"&gt;ex materia quasi et forma sibi   proporti&lt;gap/&gt; &lt;/explicit&gt; &lt;explicit type="reverse"&gt;saued be shulle that doome of day the at &lt;/explicit&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element explicit {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.msExcerpt.attributes, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.20. <extent>

<p><b>&lt;extent&gt;</b> (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>supportDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;extent&gt;3200 sentences&lt;/extent&gt; &lt;extent&gt;between 10 and 20 Mb&lt;/extent&gt; &lt;extent&gt;ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes&lt;/extent&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The &lt;measure&gt; element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.</p> <pre> &lt;extent&gt;   &lt;measure unit="MiB" quantity="4.2"&gt;About four megabytes&lt;/measure&gt;   &lt;measure unit="pages" quantity="245"&gt;245 pages of source     material&lt;/measure&gt; &lt;/extent&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element extent {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source, </pre>

	macro.phraseSeq
--	-----------------

## 2.1.21. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>teiHeader</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>extent</u> <u>publicationStmt</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>Note</b>	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;fileDesc&gt;   &lt;titleStmt&gt;     &lt;title&gt;The shortest possible TEI document&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;/titleStmt&gt;   &lt;publicationStmt&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Distributed as part of TEI P5&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;p&gt;No print source exists: this is an original digital text&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; &lt;/fileDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="titleStmt"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="editionStmt"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="publicationStmt"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="seriesStmt"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="notesStmt"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="sourceDesc"       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element fileDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   (     (       titleStmt,       editionStmt?,       extent?,       publicationStmt,       seriesStmt*, </pre>



	<pre>         notesStmt?       ),       sourceDesc+     )   } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.22. <foliation>

<b>&lt;foliation&gt;</b> (foliation) describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex or similar object. [10.7.1.4. Foliation]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>supportDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;foliation&gt;Contemporary foliation in red roman numerals in the centre of the outer margin.&lt;/foliation&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element foliation {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.specialPara } </pre>

## 2.1.23. <foreign>

<b>&lt;foreign&gt;</b> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source))
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.emphLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u>

	<b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Note	<p>The global <i>xml:lang</i> attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.</p> <p>This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global <i>xml:lang</i> attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.</p> <p>The &lt;distinct&gt; element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.</p>
Example	<pre>This is   heathen Greek to you still? Your &lt;foreign xml:lang="la"&gt;lapis   philosophicus&lt;/foreign&gt;?</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.24. <forename>

<forename> (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> ( <a href="#">@xml:id</a> , <a href="#">@n</a> , <a href="#">@xml:lang</a> , <a href="#">@xml:base</a> , <a href="#">@xml:space</a> ) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> ( <a href="#">@rend</a> , <a href="#">@style</a> , <a href="#">@rendition</a> ) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> ( <a href="#">@corresp</a> , <a href="#">@synch</a> , <a href="#">@sameAs</a> , <a href="#">@copy-Of</a> , <a href="#">@next</a> , <a href="#">@prev</a> , <a href="#">@exclude</a> , <a href="#">@select</a> ) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> ( <a href="#">@change</a> ) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> ( <a href="#">@source</a> )
Member of	<a href="#">model.persNamePart</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Example	<pre>&lt;persName&gt;   &lt;roleName&gt;Ex-President&lt;/roleName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;George&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Bush&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/persName&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;</pre>

	<pre>&lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element forename {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.25. <fw>

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.placement</a> (@place) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>resp</b> (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> #A #AB #B #C #D #E #M3</p> <p><b>type</b> classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Recommended</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> fo- lio- ta- tion mar- gin- al_note</p>

	colonnes
Member of	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">text</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Note	Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the <i>rend</i> attribute. The <code>&lt;fw&gt;</code> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.
Example	<pre> &lt;fw type="marginal_note"   xml:id="f04r_c3_102_b" corresp="#f04r_c3_102" resp="#B"&gt;   &lt;lb type="principal" break="no"/&gt; dicitur m# a greco# ardiu# so# &lt;lb type="principal"/&gt; nium i excitatio &lt;/fw&gt;    et  &lt;fw type="colonnes" n="f04r"/&gt;    et  &lt;fw type="foliotation"&gt;   &lt;lb/&gt; 19 &lt;/fw&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element fw {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.facs.attribute.facs,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.placement.attributes,   att.written.attributes,   attribute resp   {     list { ( "#A"   "#AB"   "#B"   "#C"   "#D"   "#E"   "#M3" )+ }   }?,   attribute type { "foliotation"   "marginal_note"   "colonnes" }?,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.26. <gloss>

<b>&lt;gloss&gt;</b> (gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses 22.4.1. Description of Components]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) ( <u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) ( <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@resp)) ( <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls) <u>att.typed</u> (@type) <u>att.pointing</u> (@target) <u>att.cReferencing</u> (@cRef)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.emphLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	The <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes are mutually exclusive.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>We may define &lt;term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc"&gt;discoursal point of view&lt;/term&gt; as &lt;gloss target="#tdpv"&gt;the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.&lt;/gloss&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element gloss {   att.global.attributes,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   att.pointing.attributes,   att.cReferencing.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.27. <handDesc>

<b>&lt;handDesc&gt;</b> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different hands used in a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)  hands (hands) specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.count</u>

Member of	<code>model.physDescPart</code>
Contained by	<b>msdescription:</b> <code>physDesc</code>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <code>p</code> <b>header:</b> <code>handNote</code> <b>linking:</b> <code>ab</code>
Example	<pre>&lt;handDesc&gt; &lt;handNote scope="major"&gt;Written throughout in &lt;term&gt;angelicana formata&lt;/term&gt;.&lt;/handNote&gt; &lt;/handDesc&gt;</pre>
Example	<pre>&lt;handDesc hands="2"&gt; &lt;p&gt;The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/handDesc&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element handDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   attribute hands { text }?,   ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, handNote+ ) ) }</pre>

### 2.1.28. <handNote>

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.handFeatures</code> ( <code>@scribe</code> , <code>@scribeRef</code> , <code>@script</code> , <code>@scriptRef</code> , <code>@medium</code> , <code>@scope</code> ) <code>att.global</code> ( <code>@xml:id</code> , <code>@n</code> , <code>@xml:lang</code> , <code>@xml:base</code> , <code>@xml:space</code> ) <code>att.global.rendition</code> ( <code>@rend</code> , <code>@style</code> , <code>@rendition</code> ) <code>att.global.linking</code> ( <code>@corresp</code> , <code>@synch</code> , <code>@sameAs</code> , <code>@copyOf</code> , <code>@next</code> , <code>@prev</code> , <code>@exclude</code> , <code>@select</code> ) <code>att.global.change</code> ( <code>@change</code> ) <code>att.global.source</code> ( <code>@source</code> )
Contained by	<b>msdescription:</b> <code>handDesc</code>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <code>bibl</code> <code>cb</code> <code>date</code> <code>foreign</code> <code>gloss</code> <code>hi</code> <code>lb</code> <code>listBibl</code> <code>milestone</code> <code>name</code> <code>note</code> <code>p</code> <code>pb</code> <code>quote</code> <code>ref</code> <code>title</code> <b>header:</b> <code>idno</code> <b>linking:</b> <code>ab</code> <code>seg</code> <b>msdescription:</b> <code>height</code> <code>locus</code> <code>msDesc</code> <code>origDate</code> <code>width</code> <b>namesdates:</b> <code>country</code> <code>forename</code> <code>orgName</code> <code>persName</code> <code>surname</code> <b>transcr:</b> <code>fw</code> <code>handShift</code> <code>supplied</code> character data

<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;handNote scope="sole"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Written in insular     phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed     minuscule.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/handNote&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element handNote {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.handFeatures.attributes,   macro.specialPara }</pre>

### 2.1.29. <handShift>

<b>&lt;handShift&gt;</b> (handwriting shift) marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or the beginning of a scribal stint. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]	
<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<u>att.global.facs</u> (@facs)) (<u>att.global.change</u> (@change)) (<u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@resp)) (<u>att.global.source</u> (@source)) <u>att.handFeatures</u> (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)</p> <p><b>new</b> indicates a <u>&lt;handNote&gt;</u> element describing the hand concerned.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Recommended</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute serves the same function as the <i>hand</i> attribute provided for those elements which are members of the <i>att.transcriptional</i> class. It may be renamed at a subsequent major release.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.pPart.transcriptional</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u></p>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	The <u>&lt;handShift&gt;</u> element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink. Like other milestone elements, it should appear at the point of transition from some other state to the state which it describes.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;l&gt;When wolde the cat dwelle in his ynn&lt;/l&gt; &lt;handShift medium="greenish-ink"/&gt;</pre>

	<code>&lt;l&gt;And if the cattles skynne be slyk &lt;handShift medium="black-ink"/&gt; and gaye&lt;/l&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element handShift {   att.global.attributes,   att.handFeatures.attributes,   attribute new { text }?,   empty } </pre>

## 2.1.30. <head>

<b>&lt;head&gt;</b> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.placement</a> (@place) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.link- ing</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.glob- al.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.headLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	The <a href="#">&lt;head&gt;</a> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <a href="#">&lt;head&gt;</a> element based on its structural position. A <a href="#">&lt;head&gt;</a> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <a href="#">&lt;div1&gt;</a> is the title of that chapter or section.
<b>Example</b>	<p>The most common use for the <a href="#">&lt;head&gt;</a> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or <i>incipits</i> may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <a href="#">&lt;trailer&gt;</a>, as in this example:</p> <pre> &lt;div1 n="I" type="book"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of     Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;div2 type="section"&gt;     &lt;head&gt;In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.&lt;/head&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Proposing as I do ...&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;p&gt;From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve       years passed.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;trailer&gt;Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six       years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.&lt;/trailer&gt;   &lt;/div2&gt; &lt;/div1&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the <i>place</i> attribute.</p> <pre> &lt;div type="subsection"&gt;   &lt;head place="margin"&gt;Secunda conclusio&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;p&gt;     &lt;lb n="1251"/&gt;     &lt;hi rend="large"&gt;Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis&lt;supplied&gt;.&lt;/supplied&gt;   &lt;/hi&gt;   &lt;lb n="1252"/&gt;Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium   [...] </pre>



	<pre> &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/div&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The <code>&lt;head&gt;</code> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:</p> <pre> With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. &lt;list rend="bulleted"&gt; &lt;head&gt;Connectives&lt;/head&gt; &lt;item&gt;above&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;accordingly&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;across from&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;adjacent to&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;again&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="lg"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.lLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element head {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.placement.attributes,   att.written.attributes,   (     text     lg     model.gLike     model.phrase     model.inter     model.lLike     model.global   ) * } </pre>

### 2.1.31. <height>

<b>&lt;height&gt;</b> (height) contains a measurement measured along the axis at a right angle to the bottom of the object. [10.3.4. Dimensions]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p>unit names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.dimensions</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p>

	<b>Legal values mm are:</b>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.measureLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	Character data only
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;height unit="in" quantity="7"/&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.xtext"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element height {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,   att.ranging.attribute.atMost,   att.ranging.attribute.min,   att.ranging.attribute.max,   att.ranging.attribute.confidence,   attribute unit { "mm" }?,   macro.xtext }</pre>

### 2.1.32. <hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.hiLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>

	<b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;hi rend="gothic"&gt;And this Indenture further witnesseth&lt;/hi&gt; that the said &lt;hi rend="italic"&gt;Walter Shandy&lt;/hi&gt;, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent }</pre>

### 2.1.33. <history>

<history> (history) groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.8. History]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;history&gt;   &lt;origin&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Written in Durham during the mid twelfth       century.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/origin&gt;   &lt;provenance&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Recorded in two medieval       catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and       1405.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/provenance&gt;   &lt;provenance&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)       and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)       according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/provenance&gt;   &lt;acquisition&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by       Thomas Gale and his son Roger.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/acquisition&gt; &lt;/history&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="origin" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="provenance"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="acquisition"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element history {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,</pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xml:lang, att.global.attribute.xml:base, att.global.attribute.xml:space, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition? ) ) </pre>
--	--

### 2.1.34. <hyphenation>

<b>&lt;hyphenation&gt;</b> (hyphenation) summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.declarable</a> (@default) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.editorialDeclPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;hyphenation eol="some"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/hyphenation&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element hyphenation {   att.global.attribute.xml:id,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xml:lang,   att.global.attribute.xml:base,   att.global.attribute.xml:space,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declarable.attributes,   model.pLike+ } </pre>

### 2.1.35. <idno>

<b>&lt;idno&gt;</b> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
<b>Module</b>	header

<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @dating-Method)</p> <p>type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values DOI are:</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	<a href="#">&lt;idno&gt;</a> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for <i>type</i> on <a href="#">&lt;idno&gt;</a> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;idno type="ISBN"&gt;978-1-906964-22-1&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="ISSN"&gt;0143-3385&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="DOI"&gt;10.1000/123&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="URI"&gt;http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="URI"&gt;http://authority.nzetc.org/463/&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="LT"&gt;Thomason Tract E.537 (17)&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="Wing"&gt;C695&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;idno type="oldCat"&gt;   &lt;g ref="#sym"/&gt;345 &lt;/idno&gt;</pre> <p>In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <a href="#">&lt;glyph&gt;</a> or <a href="#">&lt;char&gt;</a> element referenced here as <a href="#">#sym</a>.</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="idno"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element idno {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,</pre>

	<pre> att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.sortable.attributes, att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, attribute type { "DOI" }?, ( text   model.gLike   idno ) * </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.36. <incipit>

<incipit> contains the *incipit* of a manuscript or similar object item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any *rubric* which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.msExcerpt</a> (@defective) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;incipit&gt;Pater noster qui es in celis&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit defective="true"&gt;statem dedit hominibus alleluia.&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit type="biblical"&gt;Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit&gt;O ongehoeerde gewerdighe christi&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit type="lemma"&gt;Firmiter&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;incipit&gt;Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non potest&lt;/incipit&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element incipit {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.37. <layout>

**<layout>** (layout) describes how text is laid out on the page or surface of the object, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p><b>writtenLines</b> (written lines) specifies the number of written lines per column</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–2 occurrences of <u>teidata.count</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> If a single number is given, all columns have this number of written lines. If two numbers are given, the number of written lines per column varies between the values supplied.</p>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>layoutDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>idno</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32"&gt;Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.&lt;/layout&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"&gt; &lt;p&gt;2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule   between the columns.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50"&gt; &lt;p&gt;Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule   between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of writing.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;layout streams="3" columns="3"/&gt; &lt;!-- Further down in document body --&gt; &lt;div type="page"&gt;   &lt;ab&gt;     &lt;pb/&gt;     ###&lt;cb type="top-stream"/&gt;     ###&lt;cb type="mid-stream"/&gt;     ###&lt;cb type="bottom-stream"/&gt;   &lt;!-- cb here for demo purposes --&gt;   &lt;/ab&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element layout {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,</pre>

	<pre> att.global.source.attribute.source, attribute writtenLines { list { ? } }?, macro.specialPara </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.38. <layoutDesc>

<b>&lt;layoutDesc&gt;</b> (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>objectDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> p <b>linking:</b> ab <b>msdescription:</b> layout
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;layoutDesc&gt; &lt;p&gt;Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;layoutDesc&gt; &lt;layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;     &lt;locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/&gt;     2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with     central rule between the columns.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt; &lt;layout columns="3"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;     &lt;locus from="f16"/&gt;Prickings for three columns are visible.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/layout&gt; &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="layout" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element layoutDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, layout+ ) ) } </pre>

## 2.1.39. <lb>

**<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

<b>Module</b>	core
---------------	------



<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>type</b> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values in-ter-linear principal</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">text</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	<p>By convention, <code>&lt;lb&gt;</code> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The <i>n</i> attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <code>&lt;lb&gt;</code> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <code>&lt;l&gt;</code> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.</p> <p>The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes <i>break</i>, <i>ed</i>, or <i>edRef</i> should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;lb type="principal"/&gt; oscula nati hec uestra tuor ; sic quos extremo infine  et  &lt;lb type="interlinear"/&gt; &lt;gloss type="S22" xml:id="f18r_l11_a" target="#f18r_l11" resp="##"&gt; #mitto &lt;/gloss&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element lb {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,</pre>

	<pre> att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.facs.attribute.facs, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.edition.attributes, att.spanning.attributes, att.breaking.attributes, attribute type { "interlinear"   "principal" }?, empty } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.40. <licence>

<b>&lt;licence&gt;</b> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.pointing</a> (@target) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dateable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @dating-Method)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.availabilityPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The <i>target</i> attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The <i>when</i> , <i>notBefore</i> , <i>notAfter</i> , <i>from</i> or <i>to</i> attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"&gt; Licence &lt;/licence&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;availability&gt; &lt;licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/" notBefore="2013-01-01"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence     applies to this document.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;p&gt;The licence was added on January 1, 2013.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/licence&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element licence {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, </pre>

Creative Commons At

	<pre> att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.pointing.attributes, att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, macro.specialPara } </pre>
--	---

### 2.1.41. <listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.sortable</u> (@sortKey) <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>change</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sourceDesc</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>foliation</u> <u>layout</u> <u>msItemStruct</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>support</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>supplied</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>head</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>pb</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listBibl&gt; &lt;head&gt;Works consulted&lt;/head&gt; &lt;bibl&gt;Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;biblStruct&gt; &lt;analytic&gt; &lt;title&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt; &lt;/analytic&gt; &lt;monogr&gt; &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt; &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt; &lt;imprint&gt; &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt; &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/imprint&gt; &lt;/monogr&gt; &lt;/biblStruct&gt; &lt;/listBibl&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.milestoneLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" </pre>

	<pre> maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.milestoneLike"   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="relation"   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element listBibl {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.sortable.attributes,   att.declarable.attributes,   (     model.headLike*,     desc*,     ( model.milestoneLike   relation   listRelation )*,     ( model.biblLike+, ( model.milestoneLike   relation   listRelation ) * )+   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.42. <locus>

<b>&lt;locus&gt;</b> (locus) defines a location within a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object typically as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p>from (from) specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form, typically a page number.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.word</u></p> <p>to (to) specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form, typically as a page number.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.word</u></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.pPart.msdesc</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msItemStruct</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u></p>

May contain	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">hi</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">locus</a></p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>The <i>target</i> attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the ‘Ben Jonson’ example.</p> <p>To associate a <code>&lt;locus&gt;</code> element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global <i>fac</i>s attribute should be used, as shown in the ‘Birds Praise of Love’ example. The <i>fac</i>s attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as in that example, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <code>&lt;surface&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;zone&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;graphic&gt;</code>, or <code>&lt;binaryObject&gt;</code> elements.</p> <p>When a single page is being cited, use the <i>from</i> and <i>to</i> attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the <i>from</i> attribute may be used without <i>to</i>; for example a citation such as ‘p. 3ff’ might be encoded <code>&lt;locus from="3"&gt;p. 3ff&lt;/locus&gt;</code>.</p>
Example	<pre> &lt;!-- within ms description --&gt;&lt;msItem n="1"&gt; &lt;locus target="#F1r #F1v #F2r" from="1r" to="2r"&gt;ff. 1r-2r&lt;/locus&gt; &lt;author&gt;Ben Jonson&lt;/author&gt; &lt;title&gt;Ode to himself&lt;/title&gt; &lt;rubric rend="italics"&gt; An Ode&lt;lb/&gt; to him selfe.&lt;/rubric&gt; &lt;incipit&gt;Com leau the loathed stage&lt;/incipit&gt; &lt;explicit&gt;And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.&lt;/explicit&gt; &lt;bibl&gt; &lt;name&gt;Beal&lt;/name&gt;, &lt;title&gt;Index 1450-1625&lt;/title&gt;, JnB 380&lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/msItem&gt; &lt;!-- within transcription ... --&gt; &lt;pb xml:id="F1r"/&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;pb xml:id="F1v"/&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;pb xml:id="F2r"/&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; </pre>
Example	<p>The <i>fac</i>s attribute is available globally when the <i>transcr</i> module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:</p> <pre> &lt;msItem&gt; &lt;locus facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg images/10v.jpg"&gt;ols. 8v-10v&lt;/locus&gt; &lt;title&gt;Birds Praise of Love&lt;/title&gt; &lt;bibl&gt; &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt; &lt;biblScope&gt;1506&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/msItem&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="hi"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="locus"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element locus {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   attribute from { text }?,   attribute to { text }?,   ( text   model.gLike   hi   locus ) * } </pre>

## 2.1.43. <milestone>

<b>&lt;milestone&gt;</b> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.type</a> (@type) <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>resp</b> (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Legal values #Keil are:</b></p> <p><b>unit</b> provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.milestoneUnit</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values chapter are:</b></p> <p><b>book</b></p> <p><b>page</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">text</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	<p>For this element, the global <i>n</i> attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value <i>unnumbered</i> should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.</p> <p>The order in which <b>&lt;milestone&gt;</b> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/&gt; ... &lt;milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/&gt; ...</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre> element milestone {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.facs.attribute.facs,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.typed.attributes,   att.edition.attributes,   att.spanning.attributes,   att.breaking.attributes,   attribute resp { list { "#Keil"+ } }?,   attribute unit { "chapter"   "book"   "page" },   empty } </pre>
--------------------	--

## 2.1.44. <msContents>

<msContents> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.msExcerpt</a> (@defective) <a href="#">att.msClass</a> (@class) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Contained by	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
Note	Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.
Example	<pre> &lt;msContents class="#sermons"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;A collection of Lollard sermons&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/msContents&gt; </pre>
Example	<pre> &lt;msContents&gt;   &lt;msItem n="1"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 5r-7v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;An ABC&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;239&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="2"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 7v-8v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title xml:lang="frm"&gt;Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;3747&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="3"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fol. 8v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;Truth&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;biblScope&gt;809&lt;/biblScope&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;msItem n="4"&gt;     &lt;locus&gt;fols. 8v-10v&lt;/locus&gt;     &lt;title&gt;Birds Praise of Love&lt;/title&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;bibl&gt;   &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;biblScope&gt;1506&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/msItem&gt; &lt;msItem n="5"&gt;   &lt;locus&gt;fols. 10v-11v&lt;/locus&gt;   &lt;title xml:lang="la"&gt;De amico ad amicam&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;title xml:lang="la"&gt;Responcio&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;title&gt;IMEV&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;biblScope&gt;16 &amp; 19&lt;/biblScope&gt;   &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/msItem&gt; &lt;msItem n="6"&gt;   &lt;locus&gt;fols. 14r-126v&lt;/locus&gt;   &lt;title&gt;Troilus and Criseyde&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;note&gt;Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation throughout&lt;/note&gt; &lt;/msItem&gt; &lt;/msContents&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="titlePage"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="msItem"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="msItemStruct"/&gt;       &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element msContents {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   att.msClass.attributes,   (     model.pLike+       ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem   msItemStruct ) * )   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.45. <msDesc>

<b>&lt;msDesc&gt;</b> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object such as early printed books. [10.1. Overview]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.sortable</a> (@sortKey) <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.docStatus</a> (@status) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.biblLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>



	<b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">p</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Although the <code>&lt;msDesc&gt;</code> has primarily been designed with a view to encoding manuscript descriptions, it may also be used for other objects such as early printed books, fascicles, epigraphs, or any text-bearing objects that require substantial description. If an object is not text-bearing or the reasons for describing the object is not primarily the textual content, the more general <code>&lt;object&gt;</code> may be more suitable.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msDesc&gt;   &lt;msIdentifier&gt;     &lt;settlement&gt;Oxford&lt;/settlement&gt;     &lt;repository&gt;Bodleian Library&lt;/repository&gt;     &lt;idno type="Bod"&gt;MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.&lt;/idno&gt;   &lt;/msIdentifier&gt;   &lt;msContents&gt;     &lt;msItem&gt;       &lt;author&gt;Geoffrey Chaucer&lt;/author&gt;       &lt;title&gt;The Canterbury Tales&lt;/title&gt;     &lt;/msItem&gt;   &lt;/msContents&gt;   &lt;physDesc&gt;     &lt;objectDesc&gt;       &lt;p&gt;A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx         28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;p&gt;The pages are margined and ruled throughout.&lt;/p&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44         folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the         remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/objectDesc&gt;   &lt;/physDesc&gt; &lt;/msDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="msIdentifier"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="msContents"           minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="physDesc"           minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="additional"           minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;           &lt;elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"             maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;           &lt;elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0"             maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;/alternate&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element msDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.sortable.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.docStatus.attributes, (   msIdentifier,   model.headLike*,   (     model.pLike+       (       msContents?,       physDesc?,       history?,       additional?,       ( msPart*   msFrag* )     )   ) ) ) } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.46. <msIdentifier>

<b>&lt;msIdentifier&gt;</b> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	model.biblPart
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>msDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>altIdentifier</u> <u>repository</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msIdentifier&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;San Marino&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;repository&gt;Huntington Library&lt;/repository&gt;   &lt;idno&gt;MS.El.26.C.9&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;/msIdentifier&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')"&gt;An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.&lt;/s:report&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.placeNamePart"         expand="sequenceOptional"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="institution"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="repository"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="collection"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"         maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="msName"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="objectName"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="altIdentifier"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element msIdentifier {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, (   ( country?, institution?, repository?, collection*, idno* ),   ( msName   objectName   altIdentifier )* ) ) </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.47. <msItemStruct>

<msItemStruct> (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.msExcerpt</u> (@defective) <u>att.msClass</u> (@class) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>msContents</u> <u>msItemStruct</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msItemStruct</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msItemStruct n="2" defective="false"   class="#biblComm"&gt;   &lt;locus from="24v" to="97v"&gt;24v-97v&lt;/locus&gt;   &lt;author&gt;Apringius de Beja&lt;/author&gt;   &lt;title type="uniform" xml:lang="la"&gt;Tractatus in Apocalypsin&lt;/title&gt;   &lt;rubric&gt;Incipit Trac&lt;supplied reason="omitted"&gt;ta&lt;/supplied&gt;tus     in apoka&lt;lb/&gt;lipsin eruditissimi uiri &lt;lb/&gt; Apringi ep&lt;ex&gt;iscop&lt;/ex&gt;i     Pacensis eccl&lt;ex&gt;esi&lt;/ex&gt;e&lt;/rubric&gt;   &lt;finalRubric&gt;EXPLIC&lt;ex&gt;IT&lt;/ex&gt; EXPO&lt;lb/&gt;SITIO APOCALIPSIS     QVA&lt;ex&gt;M&lt;/ex&gt; EXPOSUIT DOM&lt;lb/&gt;NVS APRINGIUS EP&lt;ex&gt;ISCOPU&lt;/ex&gt;S.     DEO GR&lt;ex&gt;ACI&lt;/ex&gt;AS AGO. FI&lt;lb/&gt;NITO LABORE ISTO.&lt;/finalRubric&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900"&gt;Apringius&lt;/ref&gt;, ed. Férotin&lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;textLang mainLang="la"&gt;Latin&lt;/textLang&gt; &lt;/msItemStruct&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="locus"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="locusGrp"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.pLike"         minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="author" minOccurs="0"           maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="respStmt"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="title" minOccurs="0"           maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="rubric" minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="incipit" minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="msItemStruct"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="explicit"           minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="finalRubric"           minOccurs="0"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="colophon"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="decoNote"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="listBibl"           minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="bibl"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="biblStruct"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;elementRef key="filiation" minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.noteLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element msItemStruct {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   att.msClass.attributes,   (     ( locus   locusGrp )?,     (       model.pLike+         (         author*,         respStmt*,         title*,         rubric?,         incipit?,         msItemStruct*,         explicit?,         finalRubric?,         colophon*,         decoNote*,         listBibl*,         ( bibl   biblStruct )*,         filiation?,         model.noteLike*,         textLang?       )     )   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.48. <name>

<b>&lt;name&gt;</b> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.personal</u> ( <u>att.naming</u> ( <u>att.canonical</u> (@ref)) ) <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.nameLike.agent</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u>

	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Note	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <u>&lt;persName&gt;</u> , <u>&lt;placeName&gt;</u> , or <u>&lt;orgName&gt;</u> , when the TEI module for names and dates is included.
Example	<pre>&lt;name type="person"&gt;Thomas Hoccleve&lt;/name&gt; &lt;name type="place"&gt;Villingaholt&lt;/name&gt; &lt;name type="org"&gt;Vetus Latina Institut&lt;/name&gt; &lt;name type="person" ref="#HOC001"&gt;Ooccleve&lt;/name&gt;</pre>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element name {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.personal.attributes,   att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   att.editLike.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.49. <normalization>

<normalization> (normalization) indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
Module	header
Attributes	<p>Attributes <u>att.declarable</u> (@default) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p>method indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> markup</p> <p><b>are:</b></p>

Member of	<code>model.editorialDeclPart</code>
Contained by	<b>header:</b> <code>editorialDecl</code>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <code>p</code> <b>linking:</b> <code>ab</code>
Example	<pre> &lt;editorialDecl&gt;   &lt;normalization method="markup"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to modern       20th century typographical practice, the &lt;gi&gt;choice&lt;/gi&gt; element has been used to       enclose &lt;gi&gt;orig&lt;/gi&gt; and &lt;gi&gt;reg&lt;/gi&gt; elements giving the original and new values       respectively. ... &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/normalization&gt;   &lt;normalization method="silent"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero spaces;       spacing between words has been regularized to one space.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/normalization&gt;   &lt;normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th       Collegiate dictionary.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/normalization&gt; &lt;/editorialDecl&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element normalization {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declarable.attributes,   attribute method { "markup" }?,   model.pLike+ } </pre>

## 2.1.50. <note>

<b>&lt;note&gt;</b> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]	
Module	core
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.placement</code> (@place) <code>att.written</code> (@hand) <code>att.anchoring</code> (@anchored, @targetEnd) <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <code>att.global.change</code> (@change) <code>att.global.source</code> (@source)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <code>att.typed</code></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.enumerated</code></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <code>ex-libris</code></p>

	po- et- ry  prose
Member of	<a href="#">model.noteLike</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">text</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Example	<p>In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":</p> <pre> And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly &lt;note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"&gt; &lt;term xml:lang="de"&gt;Malerisch&lt;/term&gt;. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as &lt;mentioned&gt;picturesque&lt;/mentioned&gt; and &lt;mentioned&gt;painterly&lt;/mentioned&gt; respectively. &lt;/note&gt; style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.  &lt;!-- elsewhere in the document --&gt; &lt;respStmt xml:id="MDMH"&gt; &lt;resp&gt;translation from German to English&lt;/resp&gt; &lt;name&gt;Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; </pre> <p>For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.</p>
Example	<p>The global <i>n</i> attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:</p> <pre> Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, &lt;note n="126" anchored="true"&gt; The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. &lt;/note&gt; is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. </pre> <p>However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.</p>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element note {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.placement.attributes, att.written.attributes, att.anchoring.attributes, attribute type { "ex-libris"   "poetry"   "prose" }?, macro.specialPara </pre>
--	--

### 2.1.51. <objectDesc>

<b>&lt;objectDesc&gt;</b> (object description) contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p><b>form</b> (form) a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier, for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>codex</b></p> <p><b>are:</b></p> <p><b>Note</b> Definitions for the terms used may typically be provided by a &lt;valList&gt; element in the project schema specification.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.physDescPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>physDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>p</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>layoutDesc</u> <u>supportDesc</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;objectDesc form="codex"&gt;   &lt;supportDesc material="mixed"&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Early modern     &lt;material&gt;parchment&lt;/material&gt; and     &lt;material&gt;paper&lt;/material&gt;.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/supportDesc&gt;   &lt;layoutDesc&gt;     &lt;layout ruledLines="25 32"/&gt;   &lt;/layoutDesc&gt; &lt;/objectDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="supportDesc"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="layoutDesc"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element objectDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid, </pre>



	<pre> att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, attribute form { "codex" }?, ( model.pLike+   ( supportDesc?, layoutDesc? ) ) </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.52. <orgName>

<orgName> (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dateable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @not-Before-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @dating-Method)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.nameLike.agent</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary"> <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society </orgName> [...]
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element orgName {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, att.editLike.attributes, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
--	--

### 2.1.53. <origDate>

<b>&lt;origDate&gt;</b> (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence, @instant) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.datable.w3c</a> (@when) <a href="#">att.datable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;origDate notBefore="-0300" notAfter="-0200"&gt;3rd century BCE&lt;/origDate&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt; &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt; &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element origDate {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.datable.w3c.attribute.when, att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, att.ranging.attribute.atLeast, att.ranging.attribute.atMost, att.ranging.attribute.min, att.ranging.attribute.max, att.ranging.attribute.confidence, att.editLike.attributes, ( text   model.gLike   model.phrase   model.global ) * </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.54. <origin>

<origin> (origin) contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.8. History]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.editLike</u> (@evidence, @instant) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.responsibility</u> (@resp) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.datable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>history</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;origin notBefore="1802" notAfter="1845" evidence="internal" resp="#AMH"&gt;Copied in &lt;name type="origPlace"&gt;Derby&lt;/name&gt;, probably from an old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to &lt;persName xml:id="AMH"&gt;Anne-Mette Hansen&lt;/persName&gt;. &lt;/origin&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element origin {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.editLike.attributes,   att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom, </pre>

	<pre> att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, macro.specialPara } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.55. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.fragmentable</a> (@part) <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Member of	<a href="#">model.pLike</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Example	<pre> &lt;p&gt;Hallgerd was outside. &lt;q&gt;There is blood on your axe,&lt;/q&gt; she said. &lt;q&gt;What have you done?&lt;/q&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,&lt;/q&gt; replied Thjostolf. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,&lt;/q&gt; she said. &lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt; &lt;q&gt;Yes,&lt;/q&gt; said Thjostolf. &lt;q&gt;And now you must think up some plan for me.&lt;/q&gt; &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
Schematron	<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum  parent::tei:item  parent::tei:note  parent::tei:q  parent::tei:quote  parent::tei:remarks  parent::tei:said  parent::tei:sp  parent::tei:stage  parent::tei:cell  parent::tei:figure )" > Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report>
Schematron	<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(parent::tei:figure or parent::tei:note or ancestor::tei:floatingText)" > Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element p {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.declaring.attributes, att.fragmentable.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.56. <pb>

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.edition</a> (@ed, @edRef) <a href="#">att.spanning</a> (@spanTo) <a href="#">att.breaking</a> (@break) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
Member of	<a href="#">model.milestoneLike</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <b>publisher</b> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">text</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
May contain	Empty element
Note	<p>A &lt;pb&gt; element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global <i>n</i> attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the &lt;pb&gt; element itself.</p> <p>The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes <i>break</i>, <i>ed</i>, or <i>edRef</i> should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.</p>
Example	<p>Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.</p> <pre> &lt;p&gt; ... &lt;pb n="145" ed="ed2"/&gt; &lt;!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --&gt; ... &lt;pb n="283" ed="ed1"/&gt; &lt;!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--&gt; ... &lt;/p&gt; </pre>
Example	<p>A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the <i>facs</i> attribute</p> <pre> &lt;body&gt;   &lt;pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/&gt;   &lt;!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;         the text it contains is encoded here --&gt;   &lt;p&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/&gt;   &lt;!-- similarly, for page 2 --&gt;   &lt;p&gt;   &lt;!-- ... --&gt;   &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/body&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre> element pb {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.edition.attributes,   att.spanning.attributes,   att.breaking.attributes,   empty } </pre>
--------------------	--

## 2.1.57. <persName>

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence, @instant) <a href="#">att.personal</a> ( <a href="#">att.naming</a> ( <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@ref)) ) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
Member of	<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent</a>
Contained by	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
May contain	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
Example	<pre> &lt;persName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;Edward&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;George&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname type="linked"&gt;Bulwer-Lytton&lt;/surname&gt;, &lt;roleName&gt;Baron Lytton of   &lt;placeName&gt;Knebworth&lt;/placeName&gt; &lt;/roleName&gt; &lt;/persName&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element persName {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint, att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod, att.editLike.attributes, att.personal.attributes, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.58. <physDesc>

<b>&lt;physDesc&gt;</b> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the <code>model.physDescPart</code> class. [10.7. Physical Description]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <code>att.global.change</code> (@change) <code>att.global.source</code> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <code>msDesc</code>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <code>p</code> <b>linking:</b> <code>ab</code> <b>msdescription:</b> <code>bindingDesc</code> <code>handDesc</code> <code>objectDesc</code> <code>scriptDesc</code>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;physDesc&gt;   &lt;objectDesc form="codex"&gt;     &lt;supportDesc material="perg"&gt;       &lt;support&gt;Parchment.&lt;/support&gt;       &lt;extent&gt;i + 55 leaves       &lt;dimensions scope="all" type="leaf"         unit="inch"&gt;           &lt;height&gt;7¼&lt;/height&gt;           &lt;width&gt;5#&lt;/width&gt;         &lt;/dimensions&gt;       &lt;/extent&gt;     &lt;/supportDesc&gt;     &lt;layoutDesc&gt;       &lt;layout columns="2"&gt;In double columns.&lt;/layout&gt;     &lt;/layoutDesc&gt;   &lt;/objectDesc&gt;   &lt;handDesc&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Written in more than one hand.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/handDesc&gt;   &lt;decoDesc&gt;     &lt;p&gt;With a few coloured capitals.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/decoDesc&gt; &lt;/physDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.physDescPart"       expand="sequenceOptional"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element physDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, ( model.pLike*, objectDesc?, handDesc?, scriptDesc?, bindingDesc? ) } </pre>
--	---

## 2.1.59. <principal>

<b>&lt;principal&gt;</b> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912"&gt;Gary Taylor&lt;/principal&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element principal {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>



## 2.1.60. <provenance>

<b>&lt;provenance&gt;</b> (provenance) contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object after its creation but before its acquisition. [10.8. History]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>history</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;provenance&gt;Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.&lt;/provenance&gt; &lt;provenance&gt;Sold at Sothebys in 1899.&lt;/provenance&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element provenance {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   macro.specialPara }</pre>

## 2.1.61. <pubPlace>

<b>&lt;pubPlace&gt;</b> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.imprintPart</u> <u>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u>

	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Oxford University Press&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1989&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element pubPlace {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.62. <publicationStmt>

<b>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</b> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">fileDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a>
<b>Note</b>	Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmt-Part.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;C. Muquardt &lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date when="1846"/&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Chadwyck Healey&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Cambridge&lt;/pubPlace&gt;</pre>

	<pre> &lt;availability&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Available under licence only&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/availability&gt; &lt;date when="1992"&gt;1992&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Zea Books&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Lincoln, NE&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;2017&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;availability&gt;     &lt;p&gt;This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/availability&gt;   &lt;ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element publicationStmt {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   (     ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtPart.detail* )+       model.pLike+   ) } </pre>

### 2.1.63. <publisher>

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.source (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>

	character data
<b>Note</b>	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;imprint&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Clarendon Press&lt;/publisher&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1987&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/imprint&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element publisher {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.64. <punctuation>

<punctuation> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to punctuation marks in the original. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 3.2. Treatment of Punctuation]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.declarable</a> (@default) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p>marks indicates whether or not punctuation marks have been retained as content within the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values all are:</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.editorialDeclPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;punctuation marks="all"   placement="internal"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;All punctuation marks in the source text have been retained and represented using the   appropriate Unicode code point. In cases where a punctuation mark and nearby markup convey   the same information (for example, a sentence ends with a question mark and is also tagged   as &lt;gi&gt;s&lt;/gi&gt;) the punctuation mark is captured as content within the element.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/punctuation&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>External placement of punctuation:</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt;I would agree with Saint Augustine that "&lt;quote&gt;An unjust law is no law at all&lt;/quote&gt;".&lt;/p&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>Internal placement of punctuation:</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt;I would agree with Saint Augustine that &lt;quote&gt;"An unjust law is no law at all."&lt;/quote&gt;</pre>

	</p>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element punctuation {   att.declarable.attributes,   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   attribute marks { "all" }?,   model.pLike* }</pre>

## 2.1.65. <quote>

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (@type) <a href="#">att.msExcerpt</a> (@defective) <a href="#">att.notated</a> (@notation)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.quoteLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>textstructure:</b> <a href="#">body</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Note</b>	If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, &lt;quote&gt;You shall know a word by the company it keeps&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;ref&gt;(Firth, 1957)&lt;/ref&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>

<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element quote {   att.global.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   att.msExcerpt.attributes,   att.notated.attributes,   macro.specialPara } </pre>
---------------------------	---

## 2.1.66. <ref>

<b>&lt;ref&gt;</b> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.cReferencing</a> (@cRef) <a href="#">att.declaring</a> (@decls) <a href="#">att.internetMedia</a> (@mime-Type) <a href="#">att.pointing</a> (@target) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>resp</b> (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.ptrLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	The <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes are mutually exclusive.
<b>Example</b>	See especially <code>&lt;ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"&gt;the second sentence&lt;/ref&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	See also <code>&lt;ref target="#locution"&gt;s.v. &lt;term&gt;locution&lt;/term&gt;&lt;/ref&gt;</code> .
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;s:report test="@target and @cRef"&gt;Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on &lt;s:name/&gt; &lt;/s:report&gt;</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element ref {   att.cReferencing.attributes, </pre>

	<pre> att.declaring.attributes, att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.internetMedia.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, attribute resp { list { + } }?, macro.paraContent </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.67. <repository>

**<repository>** (repository) contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts or other objects are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <u>altIdentifier</u> <u>msIdentifier</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;msIdentifier&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;Oxford&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;institution&gt;University of Oxford&lt;/institution&gt;   &lt;repository&gt;Bodleian Library&lt;/repository&gt;   &lt;idno&gt;MS. Bodley 406&lt;/idno&gt; &lt;/msIdentifier&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element repository {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>

## 2.1.68. <resp>

<b>&lt;resp&gt;</b> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>respStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	The attribute <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class <i>att.canonical</i> may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <a href="http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html">http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html</a> for bibliographic usage.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html"&gt;compiler&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Edward Child&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element resp {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

## 2.1.69. <respStmt>

<b>&lt;respStmt&gt;</b> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	core



<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.respLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;transcribed from original ms&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Claus Huitfeldt&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;respStmt&gt;   &lt;resp&gt;converted to XML encoding&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Alan Morrison&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"           maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;       &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;         &lt;classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"           minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;         &lt;elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"           maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element respStmt {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   (     ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ )   ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) ),     note*   ) }</pre>

## 2.1.70. <revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.docStatus</a> (@status) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp,

	@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">teiHeader</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">change</a>
<b>Note</b>	If present on this element, the <i>status</i> attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <a href="#">&lt;change&gt;</a> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <a href="#">&lt;change&gt;</a> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;revisionDesc status="embargoed"&gt;   &lt;change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"&gt; deleted chapter 10 &lt;/change&gt; &lt;/revisionDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="list"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="listChange"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element revisionDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.docStatus.attributes,   ( list   listChange   change+ ) }</pre>

## 2.1.71. <scriptDesc>

<scriptDesc> contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2.1. Writing]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.physDescPart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">physDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">p</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;scriptDesc&gt; &lt;p/&gt; &lt;/scriptDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;scriptDesc&gt;   &lt;summary&gt;Contains two distinct styles of scripts &lt;/summary&gt;   &lt;scriptNote xml:id="style-1"&gt;.&lt;/scriptNote&gt;   &lt;scriptNote xml:id="style-2"&gt;.&lt;/scriptNote&gt; &lt;/scriptDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"</pre>

	<pre> maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="scriptNote"     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element scriptDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( summary?, scriptNote+ ) ) } </pre>

## 2.1.72. <scriptNote>

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.handFeatures</a> (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;scriptNote scope="sole"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element scriptNote {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, </pre>

```

att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.change.attribute.change,
att.global.source.attribute.source,
att.handFeatures.attributes,
macro.specialPara
}

```

## 2.1.73. <seg>

<seg> (Segment) permet d'individualiser des segments de texte. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

<b>Module</b>	linking
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.written</a> (@hand) <a href="#">att.notated</a> (@notation) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source) <a href="#">att.datcat</a> (@datcat, @valueDatcat)</p> <p>type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <a href="#">att.typed</a></p> <p><b>Status</b> Required</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> lemma are: ma xm- l:id</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.segLike</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;lb type="principal"/&gt; rens sibi nomen &lt;seg type="lemma" xml:id="f04v_117"&gt;omnib; modis&lt;/seg&gt; et ultra duas syl</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element seg {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.datcat.attribute.datcat, att.datcat.attribute.valueDatcat, att.written.attributes, att.notated.attributes, attribute type { "lemma"   "xml:id" }, macro paraContent } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.74. <sourceDesc>

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.declarable</a> (@default) <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">fileDesc</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">p</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">msDesc</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;sourceDesc&gt;   &lt;bibl&gt;     &lt;title level="a"&gt;The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood&lt;/title&gt;. In     &lt;author&gt;Victor E Neuberg&lt;/author&gt;, &lt;title&gt;The Penny Histories&lt;/title&gt;.     &lt;publisher&gt;OUP&lt;/publisher&gt;     &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;. &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;sourceDesc&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Born digital: no previous source exists.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.biblLike"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.listLike"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element sourceDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select, </pre>

	<pre> att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.declarable.attributes, (   model.pLike+     ( model.biblLike   model.sourceDescPart   model.listLike )+ ) } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.75. <sponsor>

<b>&lt;sponsor&gt;</b> (sponsor) specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.respLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <b>header:</b> <u>titleStmt</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>idno</u> <b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u> <b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from <i>funders</i> (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;sponsor&gt;Association for Computers and the Humanities&lt;/sponsor&gt; &lt;sponsor&gt;Association for Computational Linguistics&lt;/sponsor&gt; &lt;sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/"&gt;Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing&lt;/sponsor&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element sponsor {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.dataable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   macro.phraseSeq.limited } </pre>

## 2.1.76. <supplied>

<b>&lt;supplied&gt;</b> (supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]	
<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) (<a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) (<a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp)) (<a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.editLike</a> (@evidence, @instant) <a href="#">att.dimensions</a> (@unit) (<a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))</p> <p>cert                      <b>Status</b>                      Optional</p> <p>                                 <b>Legal values</b> low</p> <p>                                 <b>are:</b>                      <b>medi-</b></p> <p>                                                      <b>um</b></p> <p>                                                      <b>un-</b></p> <p>                                                      <b>known</b></p> <p>                                                      <b>high</b></p> <p>reason                      one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. <i>overbinding, faded-ink, lost-folio, omitted-in-original</i>.</p> <p>                                 <b>Status</b>                      Optional</p> <p>                                 <b>Datatype</b>                      1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a></p> <p><a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">support</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a></p> <p><b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>I am dr Sr yr &lt;supplied reason="illegible" source="#amanuensis_copy"&gt;very humble Servt&lt;/supplied&gt; Sydney Smith</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;supplied reason="omitted-in-original"&gt;Dedication&lt;/supplied&gt; to the duke of Bejar</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element supplied {   att.global.attributes,   att.editLike.attributes,</pre>

	<pre> att.dimensions.attributes, attribute cert { "low"   "medium"   "unknown"   "high" }?, attribute reason { list { + } }?, macro.paraContent } </pre>
--	--

## 2.1.77. <support>

<support> (support) contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript or other object. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.source (@source)
Contained by	msdescription: supportDesc
May contain	<b>core:</b> bibl cb date foreign gloss hi lb listBibl milestone name note p pb quote ref title <b>header:</b> idno <b>linking:</b> ab seg <b>msdescription:</b> height locus msDesc origDate width <b>namesdates:</b> country forename orgName persName surname <b>transcr:</b> fw handShift supplied character data
Example	<pre> &lt;objectDesc form="roll"&gt;   &lt;supportDesc&gt;     &lt;support&gt; Parchment roll with &lt;material&gt;silk&lt;/material&gt; ribbons.   &lt;/support&gt; &lt;/supportDesc&gt; &lt;/objectDesc&gt; </pre>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element support {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   macro.specialPara } </pre>

## 2.1.78. <supportDesc>

<supportDesc> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript or other object. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.source (@source)
Contained by	msdescription: objectDesc
May contain	<b>core:</b> p



	<b>header:</b> <a href="#">extent</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">support</a>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;supportDesc&gt;   &lt;support&gt; Parchment roll with &lt;material&gt;silk&lt;/material&gt; ribbons. &lt;/support&gt; &lt;/supportDesc&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="support" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="foliation"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="collation"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="condition"         minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element supportDesc {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( model.pLike+   ( support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?, condition? ) ) }</pre>

## 2.1.79. <surname>

<surname> (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.global</a> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) ( <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) ( <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) ( <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs)) ( <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change)) ( <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp)) ( <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)) <a href="#">att.personal</a> ( <a href="#">att.naming</a> ( <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@ref)) ) <a href="#">att.typed</a> (@type)
<b>Member of</b>	<a href="#">model.persNamePart</a>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">support</a> <b>namesdates:</b> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <b>transcr:</b> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">title</a> <b>header:</b> <a href="#">idno</a> <b>linking:</b> <a href="#">seg</a> <b>msdescription:</b> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">width</a>

	<b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
Example	<code>&lt;surname type="combine"&gt;St John Stevas&lt;/surname&gt;</code>
Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element surname {   att.global.attributes,   att.personal.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## 2.1.80. <teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
Contained by	<b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u>
May contain	<b>header:</b> <u>encodingDesc</u> <u>fileDesc</u> <u>revisionDesc</u>
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example	<pre> &lt;teiHeader&gt;   &lt;fileDesc&gt;     &lt;titleStmt&gt;       &lt;title&gt;Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;author&gt;Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)&lt;/author&gt;     &lt;/titleStmt&gt;     &lt;respStmt&gt;       &lt;resp&gt;Originally prepared by&lt;/resp&gt;       &lt;name&gt;Trevor Howard-Hill&lt;/name&gt;     &lt;/respStmt&gt;     &lt;respStmt&gt;       &lt;resp&gt;Revised and edited by&lt;/resp&gt;       &lt;name&gt;Christine Avern-Carr&lt;/name&gt;     &lt;/respStmt&gt;   &lt;/fileDesc&gt;   &lt;publicationStmt&gt;     &lt;distributor&gt;Oxford Text Archive&lt;/distributor&gt;     &lt;address&gt;       &lt;addrLine&gt;13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK&lt;/addrLine&gt;     &lt;/address&gt;     &lt;idno type="OTA"&gt;119&lt;/idno&gt;     &lt;availability&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Freely available on a non-commercial basis.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/availability&gt;     &lt;date when="1968"&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;/publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;sourceDesc&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)&lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/sourceDesc&gt; &lt;/teiHeader&gt; </pre>

	<pre> &lt;cRefPattern matchPattern="(\\S+) ([^.]*)\\.\\.\\.*" replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='\$1']/div2/[@n='\$2']//lb[@n='\$3'])"&gt; &lt;p&gt;A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that   listed here: &lt;list&gt;     &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the preceding &lt;gi&gt;lb&lt;/gi&gt;   &lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;a period&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the ancestor &lt;gi&gt;div2&lt;/gi&gt;   &lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;a space&lt;/item&gt;     &lt;item&gt;the &lt;att&gt;n&lt;/att&gt; value of the parent &lt;gi&gt;div1&lt;/gi&gt;   &lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;/cRefPattern&gt; &lt;/refsDecl&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt; &lt;revisionDesc&gt; &lt;list&gt; &lt;item&gt;   &lt;date when="1989-04-12"&gt;12 Apr 89&lt;/date&gt; Last checked by CAC&lt;/item&gt; &lt;item&gt;   &lt;date when="1989-03-01"&gt;1 Mar 89&lt;/date&gt; LB made new file&lt;/item&gt; &lt;/list&gt; &lt;/revisionDesc&gt; &lt;/teiHeader&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt; &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="fileDesc"/&gt;   &lt;classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;elementRef key="revisionDesc"     minOccurs="0"/&gt; &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element teiHeader {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? ) } </pre>

## 2.1.81. <text>

<b>&lt;text&gt;</b> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
<b>Module</b>	textstructure
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.declaring</u> (@decls) <u>att.written</u> (@hand) <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.resource</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>textstructure:</b> <u>TEI</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <b>textstructure:</b> <u>body</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u>

<b>Note</b>	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <code>&lt;floatingText&gt;</code> is provided for this purpose.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;text&gt;   &lt;front&gt;     &lt;docTitle&gt;       &lt;titlePart&gt;Autumn Haze&lt;/titlePart&gt;     &lt;/docTitle&gt;   &lt;/front&gt;   &lt;body&gt;     &lt;l&gt;Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;That settles softly down upon the water?&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/body&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:</p> <pre> &lt;text&gt;   &lt;front&gt;     &lt;!-- front matter for the whole group --&gt;   &lt;/front&gt;   &lt;group&gt;     &lt;text&gt;       &lt;!-- first text --&gt;     &lt;/text&gt;     &lt;text&gt;       &lt;!-- second text --&gt;     &lt;/text&gt;   &lt;/group&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="front"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;     &lt;alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="body"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="group"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="back"/&gt;       &lt;classRef key="model.global"         minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;/sequence&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element text {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.written.attributes,   (     model.global*,     ( front, model.global* )?,     ( body   group ),     model.global*,     ( back, model.global* )?   ) } </pre>

## 2.1.82. <textLang>

<b>&lt;textLang&gt;</b> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)</p> <p><b>mainLang</b> (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.language</u></p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.biblPart</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>msContents</u> <u>msItemStruct</u></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>idno</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u></p> <p>character data</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global <i>xml:lang</i> attribute attached to the element containing the description.</p> <p>In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47. Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a &lt;language&gt; element in the TEI header.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"&gt; Predominantly in English with Latin glosses&lt;/textLang&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element textLang {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   attribute mainLang { text }?,   macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

## 2.1.83. <title>

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]	
<b>Module</b>	core
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy-Of, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.dataable.custom</u> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)</p> <p><b>level</b> indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>a</b> (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.</li> <li><b>m</b> (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works</li> <li><b>j</b> (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper</li> <li><b>s</b> (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection</li> <li><b>u</b> (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an &lt;analytic&gt; element is <i>ipso facto</i> of level 'a', and one appearing within a &lt;series&gt; element of level 's'. For this reason, the <i>level</i> attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.</p>
<b>Member of</b>	<u>model.emphLike</u>
<b>Contained by</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u> <u>titleStmt</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>msItemStruct</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u></p>
<b>May contain</b>	<p><b>core:</b> <u>bibl</u> <u>cb</u> <u>date</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>hi</u> <u>lb</u> <u>listBibl</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>pb</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>idno</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>height</u> <u>locus</u> <u>msDesc</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>width</u></p>

	<b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> <b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>handShift</u> <u>supplied</u> character data
<b>Note</b>	The attributes <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class <b>att.canonical</b> may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title&gt;Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989&lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title&gt;Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition&lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;title type="full"&gt; &lt;title type="main"&gt;Synthèse&lt;/title&gt; &lt;title type="sub"&gt;an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science&lt;/title&gt; &lt;/title&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt; &lt;macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element title {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom,   att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,   att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,   attribute level { "a"   "m"   "j"   "s"   "u" }?,   macro.paraContent }</pre>

## 2.1.84. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source)
<b>Contained by</b>	<b>header:</b> <u>fileDesc</u>
<b>May contain</b>	<b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>editor</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>title</u> <b>header:</b> <u>principal</u> <u>sponsor</u>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;titleStmt&gt; &lt;title&gt;Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription&lt;/title&gt; &lt;respStmt&gt; &lt;resp&gt;compiled by&lt;/resp&gt; &lt;name&gt;P.J. Lucas&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt; &lt;/titleStmt&gt;</pre>

Content model	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"       maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.respLike"       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element titleStmt {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   ( title+, model.respLike* ) } </pre>

## 2.1.85. <width>

<width> (width) contains a measurement of an object along the axis parallel to its bottom, e.g. perpendicular to the spine of a book or codex. [10.3.4. Dimensions]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	<p>Attributes <u>att.global</u> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) <u>att.global.rendition</u> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <u>att.global.linking</u> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <u>att.global.change</u> (@change) <u>att.global.source</u> (@source) <u>att.ranging</u> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p>unit names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> <u>att.dimensions</u></p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> mm</p>
Member of	<u>model.measureLike</u>
Contained by	<p><b>core:</b> <u>author</u> <u>bibl</u> <u>biblScope</u> <u>date</u> <u>editor</u> <u>foreign</u> <u>gloss</u> <u>head</u> <u>hi</u> <u>name</u> <u>note</u> <u>p</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>quote</u> <u>ref</u> <u>resp</u> <u>textLang</u> <u>title</u></p> <p><b>header:</b> <u>authority</u> <u>change</u> <u>extent</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>licence</u> <u>principal</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>sponsor</u></p> <p><b>linking:</b> <u>ab</u> <u>seg</u></p> <p><b>msdescription:</b> <u>explicit</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>incipit</u> <u>layout</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>repository</u> <u>support</u></p> <p><b>namesdates:</b> <u>country</u> <u>forename</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u></p> <p><b>transcr:</b> <u>fw</u> <u>supplied</u></p>
May contain	Character data only
Note	If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the 'depth' axis.
Example	<pre>&lt;width unit="in"&gt;4&lt;/width&gt;</pre>
Content model	<content>



	<pre>&lt;macroRef key="macro.xtext"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element width {   att.global.attribute.xmlid,   att.global.attribute.n,   att.global.attribute.xmllang,   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,   att.global.linking.attribute.next,   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,   att.global.linking.attribute.select,   att.global.change.attribute.change,   att.global.source.attribute.source,   att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,   att.ranging.attribute.atMost,   att.ranging.attribute.min,   att.ranging.attribute.max,   att.ranging.attribute.confidence,   attribute unit { "mm" }?,   macro.xtext }</pre>

## 2.2. Model classes

### 2.2.1. model.attributable

**model.attributable** groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.quoteLike[quote]</a>

### 2.2.2. model.availabilityPart

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">availability</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">licence</a>

### 2.2.3. model.biblLike

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a>

### 2.2.4. model.biblPart

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.imprintPart[biblScope pubPlace publisher]</a> <a href="#">model.respLike[author editor principal respStmt sponsor]</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">textLang</a>

## 2.2.5. model.common

<b>model.common</b> groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">body</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.divPart</a> [ <a href="#">model.lLike</a> <a href="#">model.pLike</a> [ <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">p</a> ]] <a href="#">model.entryLike</a> <a href="#">model.inter</a> [ <a href="#">model.attributable</a> [ <a href="#">model.quoteLike</a> [ <a href="#">quote</a> ]]] <a href="#">model.biblLike</a> [ <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> ] <a href="#">model.egLike</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike</a> <a href="#">model.listLike</a> <a href="#">model.oddDecl</a> <a href="#">model.stageLike</a>
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

## 2.2.6. model.dateLike

<b>model.dateLike</b> groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">date</a>

## 2.2.7. model.divBottom

<b>model.divBottom</b> groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">body</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.divBottomPart</a> <a href="#">model.divWrapper</a>

## 2.2.8. model.divPart

<b>model.divPart</b> groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.common</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.lLike</a> <a href="#">model.pLike</a> [ <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">p</a> ]
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the <a href="#">model.inter</a> class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

## 2.2.9. model.divTop

<b>model.divTop</b> groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">body</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.divTopPart</a> [ <a href="#">model.headLike</a> [ <a href="#">head</a> ]] <a href="#">model.divWrapper</a>

## 2.2.10. model.divTopPart

<b>model.divTopPart</b> groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.divTop</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.headLike</a> [ <a href="#">head</a> ]

## 2.2.11. model.editorialDeclPart

<b>model.editorialDeclPart</b> groups elements which may be used inside <code>&lt;editorialDecl&gt;</code> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">editorialDecl</a>

Members	<a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a>
---------	--

## 2.2.12. model.emphLike

<b>model.emphLike</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.highlighted</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a>
Members	<a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">title</a>

## 2.2.13. model.encodingDescPart

<b>model.encodingDescPart</b> groups elements which may be used inside <a href="#">&lt;encodingDesc&gt;</a> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">encodingDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">editorialDecl</a>

## 2.2.14. model.global

<b>model.global</b> groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq.limited</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">text</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.global.edit</a> <a href="#">model.global.meta</a> <a href="#">model.milestoneLike[cb fw lb milestone pb]</a> <a href="#">model.noteLike[note]</a>

## 2.2.15. model.headLike

<b>model.headLike</b> groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">model.divTopPart</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">head</a>

## 2.2.16. model.hiLike

<b>model.hiLike</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.highlighted</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a>
Members	<a href="#">hi</a>

## 2.2.17. model.highlighted

<b>model.highlighted</b> groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.emphLike[foreign gloss title]</a> <a href="#">model.hiLike[hi]</a>

## 2.2.18. model.imprintPart

<b>model.imprintPart</b> groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]	
Module	tei

Used by	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a>
Members	<a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publisher</a>

## 2.2.19. model.inter

<b>model.inter</b> groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">model.common</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.attributable</a> [ <a href="#">model.quoteLike</a> [ <a href="#">quote</a> ]] <a href="#">model.biblLike</a> [ <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> ] <a href="#">model.eg-Like</a> <a href="#">model.labelLike</a> <a href="#">model.listLike</a> <a href="#">model.oddDecl</a> <a href="#">model.stageLike</a>

## 2.2.20. model.limitedPhrase

<b>model.limitedPhrase</b> groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">macro.phraseSeq.limited</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.emphLike</a> [ <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">title</a> ] <a href="#">model.hiLike</a> [ <a href="#">hi</a> ] <a href="#">model.pPart.data</a> [ <a href="#">model.addressLike</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike</a> [ <a href="#">date</a> ] <a href="#">model.measureLike</a> [ <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">width</a> ] <a href="#">model.nameLike</a> [ <a href="#">model.name-Like.agent</a> [ <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> ] <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">surname</a> ] <a href="#">model.placeStateLike</a> [ <a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">country</a> ]] <a href="#">idno</a> ]] <a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc</a> [ <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> ] <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike</a> [ <a href="#">ref</a> ]

## 2.2.21. model.measureLike

<b>model.measureLike</b> groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">width</a>

## 2.2.22. model.milestoneLike

<b>model.milestoneLike</b> groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">model.global</a>
Members	<a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">pb</a>

## 2.2.23. model.nameLike

<b>model.nameLike</b> groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.data</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent</a> [ <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> ] <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">surname</a> ] <a href="#">model.placeStateLike</a> [ <a href="#">model.placeNamePart</a> [ <a href="#">country</a> ]] <a href="#">idno</a>
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

## 2.2.24. model.nameLike.agent

<b>model.nameLike.agent</b> groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
--	--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a>
<b>Note</b>	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

### 2.2.25. model.noteLike

<b>model.noteLike</b> groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.global</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">note</a>

### 2.2.26. model.pLike

<b>model.pLike</b> groups paragraph-like elements.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">model.divPart</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">p</a>

### 2.2.27. model.pPart.data

<b>model.pPart.data</b> groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.addressLike</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[date]</a> <a href="#">model.measureLike[height width]</a> <a href="#">model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]</a> <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[forename surname]</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country]]</a> <a href="#">idno]</a>

### 2.2.28. model.pPart.edit

<b>model.pPart.edit</b> groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional[handShift supplied]</a>

### 2.2.29. model.pPart.msdesc

<b>model.pPart.msdesc</b> groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a>

### 2.2.30. model.pPart.transcriptional

<b>model.pPart.transcriptional</b> groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
--	--

Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.pPart.edit</a>
Members	<a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>

### 2.2.31. model.persNamePart

<b>model.persNamePart</b> groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a>
Members	<a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">surname</a>

### 2.2.32. model.phrase

<b>model.phrase</b> groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">macro.paraContent</a> <a href="#">macro.phraseSeq</a> <a href="#">macro.specialPara</a> <a href="#">origDate</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.graphicLike</a> <a href="#">model.highlighted[<a href="#">model.emphLike[<a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">title</a>] <a href="#">model.hi-Like[<a href="#">hi</a>]</a> <a href="#">model.lPart</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.data[<a href="#">model.addressLike</a> <a href="#">model.dateLike[<a href="#">date</a>] <a href="#">model.measureLike[<a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">width</a>] <a href="#">model.nameLike[<a href="#">model.nameLike.agent[<a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a>] <a href="#">model.offsetLike</a> <a href="#">model.persNamePart[<a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">surname</a>] <a href="#">model.placeStateLike[<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[<a href="#">country</a>] <a href="#">idno</a>] <a href="#">model.pPart.edit[<a href="#">model.pPart.editorial</a> <a href="#">model.pPart.transcriptional[<a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">supplied</a>] <a href="#">model.pPart.msdesc[<a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">origDate</a>] <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> <a href="#">model.ptrLike[<a href="#">ref</a>] <a href="#">model.ptrLike.form</a> <a href="#">model.segLike[<a href="#">seg</a>] <a href="#">model.specDescLike</a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a></a>
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

### 2.2.33. model.physDescPart

<b>model.physDescPart</b> groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.	
Module	msdescription
Used by	<a href="#">physDesc</a>
Members	<a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a>

### 2.2.34. model.placeNamePart

<b>model.placeNamePart</b> groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">model.placeStateLike</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a>
Members	<a href="#">country</a>

### 2.2.35. model.placeStateLike

<b>model.placeStateLike</b> groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei
Used by	<a href="#">model.nameLike</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.placeNamePart[<a href="#">country</a>]</a>

### 2.2.36. model.ptrLike

<b>model.ptrLike</b> groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei

Used by	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">model.limitedPhrase</a> <a href="#">model.phrase</a> <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a>
Members	<a href="#">ref</a>

### 2.2.37. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

<b>model.publicationStmtPart.agency</b> groups the child elements of a <a href="#">&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</a> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">publisher</a>
Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.detail</a> .

### 2.2.38. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

<b>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</b> groups the agency-specific child elements of the <a href="#">&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</a> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">publicationStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">model.ptrLike[ref]</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a>
Note	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it. See also <a href="#">model.publicationStmtPart.agency</a> .

### 2.2.39. model.quoteLike

<b>model.quoteLike</b> groups elements used to directly contain quotations.	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">model.attributable</a>
Members	<a href="#">quote</a>

### 2.2.40. model.resource

<b>model.resource</b> groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">TEI</a>
Members	<a href="#">text</a>

### 2.2.41. model.respLike

<b>model.respLike</b> groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
Module	<a href="#">tei</a>
Used by	<a href="#">model.biblPart</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a>
Members	<a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a>

### 2.2.42. model.segLike

<b>model.segLike</b> groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
---	--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">bibl model.phrase</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">seg</a>
<b>Note</b>	The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

### 2.2.43. model.teiHeaderPart

<b>model.teiHeaderPart</b> groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<a href="#">teiHeader</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">encodingDesc</a>

## 2.3. Attribute classes

### 2.3.1. att.anchoring

<b>att.anchoring</b> (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">note</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>anchored</b> (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.truthValue</a></p> <p><b>Default</b> true</p> <p><b>Note</b> In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The <i>anchored</i> attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the <i>n</i> attribute.</p> <p><b>targetEnd</b> (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the <i>range</i> function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. <i>range()</i>.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;p&gt;(…) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuortemporibus&lt;anchor xml:id="A55234"/&gt; totaliter expeditui...&lt;/p&gt; &lt;!-- elsewhere in the document --&gt; &lt;noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234"&gt;   &lt;note xml:lang="en"&gt; Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days. &lt;/note&gt;   &lt;note xml:lang="pl"&gt; Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne. &lt;/note&gt;</pre>



&lt;/noteGrp&gt;

## 2.3.2. att.ascribed

**att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>change</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>who</b> indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p> <p>In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (&lt;sp&gt;) in the body of the play are linked to &lt;castItem&gt; elements in the &lt;castList&gt; using the <i>who</i> attribute.</p> <pre>&lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="Barnardo"&gt;Barnardo&lt;/role&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt; &lt;castItem type="role"&gt;   &lt;role xml:id="Francisco"&gt;Francisco&lt;/role&gt;   &lt;roleDesc&gt;a soldier&lt;/roleDesc&gt; &lt;/castItem&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;sp who="#Barnardo"&gt;   &lt;speaker&gt;Barnardo&lt;/speaker&gt;   &lt;l n="1"&gt;Who's there?&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/sp&gt; &lt;sp who="#Francisco"&gt;   &lt;speaker&gt;Francisco&lt;/speaker&gt;   &lt;l n="2"&gt;Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.&lt;/l&gt; &lt;/sp&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified &lt;person&gt; element.</p>

## 2.3.3. att.breaking

**att.breaking** provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>cb</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>pb</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>break</b> indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Recommended</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Sample values include</b></p> <p><b>yes</b> the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace</p> <p><b>no</b> the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace</p> <p><b>maybe</b></p>

	<p>the encoding does not take any position on this issue.</p> <p>In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words <i>l#ðost</i> and <i>reord-berendum</i>.</p> <pre>&lt;ab&gt; ...e#esa tome iu ic#æs #e#orden #ita heardo#t . leodum la&lt;lb break="no"/&gt; ðost ærþan ichim lifes #e# rihtne #erymde reord be&lt;lb break="no"/&gt; rendum h#æt me þa#e#eorðode #uldres ealdor ofer... &lt;/ab&gt;</pre>
--	--

### 2.3.4. att.cReferencing

<b>att.cReferencing</b> provides attributes that may be used to supply a <i>canonical reference</i> as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>gloss ref</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>cRef</b> (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <code>&lt;refsDecl&gt;</code> element in the TEI header</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.text</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value of <i>cRef</i> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.</p> <p>The <code>&lt;refsDecl&gt;</code> to use may be indicated with the <i>decls</i> attribute.</p> <p>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <code>&lt;ptr&gt;</code> element.</p>

### 2.3.5. att.canonical

<b>att.canonical</b> provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>att.naming</u> [ <u>att.personal</u> [ <u>forename</u> <u>name</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>persName</u> <u>surname</u> ] <u>author</u> <u>country</u> <u>editor</u> <u>pubPlace</u> <u>repository</u> ] <u>authority</u> <u>date</u> <u>principal</u> <u>publisher</u> <u>resp</u> <u>respStmt</u> <u>sponsor</u> <u>title</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>ref</b> (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person"&gt;Seamus Heaney&lt;/name&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.</p>

### 2.3.6. att.dataable

<b>att.dataable</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dataable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	tei

<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">title</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> (@when) <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> (@when-iso) <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @dating-Point, @datingMethod)
<b>Note</b>	This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the <a href="#">att.dataable.w3c</a> class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the <a href="#">att.dataable.iso</a> and <a href="#">att.dataable.custom</a> classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

### 2.3.7. att.dataable.custom

<b>att.dataable.custom</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.dataable</a> [ <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>when-custom</b> supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace  The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are <i>not</i> valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt;Alhazen died in Cairo on the &lt;date when="1040-03-06"   when-custom="431-06-12"&gt; 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH &lt;/date&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The current world will end at the &lt;date when="2012-12-21"   when-custom="13.0.0.0.0"&gt;end of B'ak'tun 13&lt;/date&gt;.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;The Battle of Meggidu (&lt;date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23"&gt;23rd year of reign of Thutmose III&lt;/date&gt;).&lt;/p&gt; &lt;p&gt;Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub &lt;date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11"&gt;die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre> <p>Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The <i>when-custom</i> attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.</p> <p><b>notBefore-custom</b> specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>notAfter-custom</b> specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>from-custom</b> indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;event xml:id="FIRE1"   datingMethod="#julian"   from-custom="1666-09-02"   to-custom="1666-09-05"&gt; &lt;head&gt;The Great Fire of London&lt;/head&gt;</pre>

	<pre>&lt;p&gt;The Great Fire of London burned through a large part of the city of London.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/event&gt;</pre>
to-custom	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.word</a> separated by whitespace</p>
datingPoint	<p>supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p>
datingMethod	<p>supplies a pointer to a <code>&lt;calendar&gt;</code> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <pre>Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare &lt;date when-custom="1598" calendar="#julian" datingMethod="#julian"&gt;1598&lt;/date&gt;. by Iohn Stow Citizen of London.</pre> <p>In this example, the <i>calendar</i> attribute points to a <code>&lt;calendar&gt;</code> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <code>&lt;date&gt;</code> element is a Julian date, and the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the <i>when-custom</i> attribute value is Julian too.</p> <pre>&lt;date when="1382-06-28" when-custom="6890-06-20" datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"&gt; u### ##### ## &lt;num&gt;#&lt;/num&gt; ##### &lt;num&gt;###&lt;/num&gt; &lt;/date&gt;</pre> <p>In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in <i>when</i>) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in <i>when-custom</i>) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Note that the <i>datingMethod</i> attribute (unlike <i>calendar</i> defined in <a href="#">att.datable</a>) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the <i>when-custom</i> or other <i>X-custom</i> attributes), <i>not</i> the calendar of the original date in the element.</p>

## 2.3.8. att.datable.iso

**att.datable.iso** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]

<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.datable</a> [ <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">orig-Date</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">title</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>when-iso</b> supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.temporal.iso</a></p> <p>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date &amp; time formats that are <i>not</i> valid W3C format normalizations.</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00"&gt;Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04"&gt;Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05"&gt;4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05"&gt;4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm&lt;/time&gt; &lt;date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03"&gt;a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May&lt;/date&gt; &lt;time when-iso="03:00"&gt;3 A.M.&lt;/time&gt;</pre>

	<pre>&lt;time when-iso="14"&gt;around two&lt;/time&gt; &lt;time when-iso="15,5"&gt;half past three&lt;/time&gt;</pre> <p>All of the examples of the <i>when</i> attribute in the <code>att.dataable.w3c</code> class are also valid with respect to this attribute.</p> <pre>He likes to be punctual. I said &lt;q&gt;   &lt;time when-iso="12"&gt;around noon&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/q&gt;, and he showed up at &lt;time when-iso="12:00:00"&gt;12 O'clock&lt;/time&gt;</pre> <p>on the dot.</p> <p>The second occurrence of <code>&lt;time&gt;</code> could have been encoded with the <i>when</i> attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i> specification. The first occurrence could not.</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date &amp; time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>If both <i>when-iso</i> and <i>dur-iso</i> are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/&gt;</pre> <p>indicates the same time period as</p> <pre>&lt;date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/&gt;</pre> <p>In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.</p>

### 2.3.9. att.dataable.w3c

<b>att.dataable.w3c</b> provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i> . [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<code>att.dataable</code> [ <code>altIdentifier</code> <code>author</code> <code>change</code> <code>country</code> <code>date</code> <code>editor</code> <code>idno</code> <code>licence</code> <code>name</code> <code>orgName</code> <code>orig-Date</code> <code>origin</code> <code>persName</code> <code>principal</code> <code>provenance</code> <code>resp</code> <code>sponsor</code> <code>title</code> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>when</b> supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.temporal.w3c</code></p> <p>Examples of W3C date, time, and date &amp; time formats.</p> <pre>&lt;p&gt;   &lt;date when="1945-10-24"&gt;24 Oct 45&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z"&gt;September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00"&gt;Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm&lt;/time&gt;   &lt;time when="14:12:38"&gt;fourteen twelve and 38 seconds&lt;/time&gt;   &lt;date when="1962-10"&gt;October of 1962&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="--06-12"&gt;June 12th&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="---01"&gt;the first of the month&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="--08"&gt;August&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="2006"&gt;MMVI&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="0056"&gt;AD 56&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;date when="-0056"&gt;56 BC&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre> <p>This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the</p> <pre>&lt;date calendar="#julian"   when="1632-06-06"&gt;27th of May (old style)&lt;/date&gt;.</pre> <pre>&lt;opener&gt;   &lt;dateline&gt;     &lt;placeName&gt;Dorchester, Village,&lt;/placeName&gt;     &lt;date when="1828-03-02"&gt;March 2d. 1828.&lt;/date&gt;   &lt;/dateline&gt;   &lt;salute&gt;To     Mrs. Cornell,&lt;/salute&gt; Sunday &lt;time when="12:00:00"&gt;noon.&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/opener&gt;</pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notBefore @notAfter @from @to"   role="nonfatal"&gt;The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.dataable.w3c attrib-   utes.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</pre>

<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"&gt; &lt;sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal"&gt;The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01"&gt;28 May through 1 June 1863&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date &amp; time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i>, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is <code>yyyy-mm-dd</code>, but <code>yyyy, - -mm, - -dd</code>, <code>yyyy-mm</code>, or <code>- -mm-dd</code> may also be used. For the time part, the form <code>hh:mm:ss</code> is used.</p> <p>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.</p>

### 2.3.10. att.datcat

<b>att.datcat</b> provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <a href="http://www.isocat.org/">http://www.isocat.org/</a> . [9.5.2. Lexical View 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	att.segLike[seg]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p><b>Attributes</b></p> <p><b>datcat</b> contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOCat.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>valueDatcat</b> contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOCat.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In this example <i>dcr:datcat</i> relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and <i>dcr:valueDatcat</i> the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOCat DCR at <a href="http://www.isocat.org/">www.isocat.org</a>, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.</p> <pre>&lt;fs   xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr"&gt;   &lt;f name="POS"     dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345" fVal="#commonNoun"     dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/&gt; &lt;/fs&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <a href="http://www.isocat.org/12620/">http://www.isocat.org/12620/</a> ), which provides two attributes, <i>dcr:datcat</i> and <i>dcr:valueDatcat</i> .

### 2.3.11. att.declarable

<b>att.declarable</b> provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose <i>decls</i> attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
<b>Module</b>	tei

<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>default</b> indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.truthValue</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <b>true</b> This element is selected if its parent is selected</p> <p><b>false</b> This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]</p>
<b>Note</b>	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a <i>default</i> attribute with a value of true.

## 2.3.12. att.declaring

<b>att.declaring</b> provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">text</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>decls</b> identifies one or more <i>declarable elements</i> within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>
<b>Note</b>	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

## 2.3.13. att.dimensions

<b>att.dimensions</b> provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> <a href="#">width</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.ranging</a> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</p> <p><b>unit</b> names the unit used for the measurement</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>cm</b> (centimetres)</p> <p><b>mm</b> (millimetres)</p> <p><b>in</b> (inches)</p> <p><b>line</b> lines of text</p> <p><b>char</b></p>

	(characters) characters of text
--	---------------------------------

2.3.14. att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.	
Module	tei
Members	<a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">revisionDesc</a>
Attributes	<div>Attributes</div> <div>status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.</div> <div>Status Optional</div> <div>Datatype <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></div> <div>Sample values include: <div>ap-proved</div><div>can-di-date</div><div>cleared</div><div>dep-re-cat-ed</div><div>draft</div><div>[Default]</div><div>em-bar-goed</div><div>ex-pired</div><div>frozen</div><div>gal-ley</div><div>pro-posed</div><div>pub-lished</div><div>rec-om-men-da-tion</div><div>sub-mit-ted</div><div>un-fin-ished</div><div>with-drawn</div></div>



```
<change when="2010-08-02"
  status="embargoed"/>
<change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"
  who="#MSM"/>
<change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"
  who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

### 2.3.15. att.editLike

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>date</u> <u>name</u> <u>orgName</u> <u>origDate</u> <u>origin</u> <u>persName</u> <u>supplied</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>evidence</b> indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>in-</b> there is internal evidence to support the intervention.  <b>ex-</b> there is external evidence to support the intervention.  <b>con-</b> the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.</p> <p><b>instant</b> indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.xTruthValue</u></p> <p><b>Default</b> false</p>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.</p> <p>Each pointer on the <i>source</i> (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <u>&lt;witness&gt;</u>, <u>&lt;msDesc&gt;</u>, or <u>&lt;bibl&gt;</u> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.</p>

### 2.3.16. att.edition

**att.edition** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>cb</u> <u>lb</u> <u>milestone</u> <u>pb</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>ed</b> (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>edRef</b> (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.</p>

	<b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;l&gt;Of Mans First Disobedience,&lt;lb ed="1674"/&gt; and&lt;lb ed="1667"/&gt; the Fruit&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;Of that Forbidden Tree, whose&lt;lb ed="1667 1674"/&gt; mortal tast&lt;/l&gt; &lt;l&gt;Brought Death into the World,&lt;lb ed="1667"/&gt; and all&lt;lb ed="1674"/&gt; our woe,&lt;/l&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;listBibl&gt; &lt;bibl xml:id="stapledon1937"&gt;   &lt;author&gt;Olaf Stapledon&lt;/author&gt;,   &lt;title&gt;Starmaker&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;publisher&gt;Methuen&lt;/publisher&gt;, &lt;date&gt;1937&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;bibl xml:id="stapledon1968"&gt;   &lt;author&gt;Olaf Stapledon&lt;/author&gt;,   &lt;title&gt;Starmaker&lt;/title&gt;, &lt;publisher&gt;Dover&lt;/publisher&gt;, &lt;date&gt;1968&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt; &lt;/listBibl&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;p&gt;Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the&lt;pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/&gt;essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest and endless novelty of action, ... I saw myself still preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid con- &lt;pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/&gt;sciousness;&lt;/p&gt;</pre>

### 2.3.17. att.fragmentable

<b>att.fragmentable</b> provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	att.segLike[seg] <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">p</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>part</b> specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values</b> <b>Y</b>  <b>are:</b> (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect</p> <p><b>N</b> (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]</p> <p><b>I</b> (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element</p> <p><b>M</b> (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element</p> <p><b>F</b> (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element</p> <p><b>Note</b> The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.</p>

### 2.3.18. att.global

<b>att.global</b> provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei

Members	<p>TEI <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">revisionDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">width</a></p>
Attributes	<p>Attributes <a href="#">att.global.rendition</a> (@rend, @style, @rendition) <a href="#">att.global.linking</a> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) <a href="#">att.global.facs</a> (@facs) <a href="#">att.global.change</a> (@change) <a href="#">att.global.responsibility</a> (@resp) <a href="#">att.global.source</a> (@source)</p> <p><b>xml:id</b> (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> ID</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>xml:id</i> attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.</p> <p><b>n</b> (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.</p> <p><b>xml:lang</b> (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.language</a></p> <pre>&lt;p&gt; ... The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last &lt;foreign xml:lang="rap"&gt;ariki&lt;/foreign&gt; or chief (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.&lt;/p&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>xml:lang</i> value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify <i>xml:lang</i> at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <a href="#">&lt;teiHeader&gt;</a> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.</p> <p>Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of <i>xml:lang</i>.</p> <p>The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <a href="http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry">http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry</a>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <a href="http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/">http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/</a>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <a href="https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php">https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php</a>.</p> <p>The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <a href="#">&lt;language&gt;</a> element with a matching value for its <i>ident</i> attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though</p>

	these must remain consistent with their IETF Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.
xml:base	<p>provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <pre>&lt;div type="bibl"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Bibliography&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/"&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;author&gt;         &lt;name&gt;London, Letitia Elizabeth&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/author&gt;       &lt;ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm"&gt;         &lt;title&gt;The Vow of the Peacock&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/ref&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;author&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Compton, Margaret Clephane&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/author&gt;       &lt;ref target="NortMIrene.sgm"&gt;         &lt;title&gt;Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/ref&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;     &lt;bibl&gt;       &lt;author&gt;         &lt;name&gt;Taylor, Jane&lt;/name&gt;       &lt;/author&gt;       &lt;ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm"&gt;         &lt;title&gt;Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners&lt;/title&gt;       &lt;/ref&gt;     &lt;/bibl&gt;   &lt;/listBibl&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre>
xml:space	<p>signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>default</b> signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable</li> <li><b>preserve</b> indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.</p>

### 2.3.19. att.global.change

<b>att.global.change</b> provides attributes allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.	
<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">revisionDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">width</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes

	change	points to one or more <code>&lt;change&gt;</code> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space
--	--------	---

### 2.3.20. att.global.facs

**att.global.facs** provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

<b>Module</b>	transcr
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global[TEI ab altIdentifier author authority availability bibl biblScope bindingDesc body cb change correction country date editor editorialDecl encodingDesc explicit extent fileDesc foliation foreign forename fw gloss handDesc handNote handShift head height hi history hyphenation idno incipit layout layoutDesc lb licence listBibl locus milestone msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct name normalization note objectDesc orgName origDate origin p pb persName physDesc principal provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation quote ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc scriptDesc scriptNote seg sourceDesc sponsor supplied support supportDesc surname teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt width]</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p>facs (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p>

### 2.3.21. att.global.linking

**att.global.linking** provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

<b>Module</b>	linking
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global[TEI ab altIdentifier author authority availability bibl biblScope bindingDesc body cb change correction country date editor editorialDecl encodingDesc explicit extent fileDesc foliation foreign forename fw gloss handDesc handNote handShift head height hi history hyphenation idno incipit layout layoutDesc lb licence listBibl locus milestone msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct name normalization note objectDesc orgName origDate origin p pb persName physDesc principal provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation quote ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc scriptDesc scriptNote seg sourceDesc sponsor supplied support supportDesc surname teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt width]</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p>corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by white-space</p> <pre>&lt;group&gt; &lt;text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"   xml:lang="mi"&gt;   &lt;body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1"&gt;     &lt;div type="chapter"&gt;       &lt;head&gt;He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.&lt;/head&gt;       &lt;p&gt;...&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/div&gt;   &lt;/body&gt; &lt;/text&gt; &lt;text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"   xml:lang="en"&gt;</pre>

	<pre>&lt;body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"&gt;   &lt;div type="chapter"&gt;     &lt;head&gt;An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.&lt;/head&gt;     &lt;p&gt;...&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/div&gt; &lt;/body&gt; &lt;/text&gt; &lt;/group&gt;</pre>
	<p>In this example a <code>&lt;group&gt;</code> contains two <code>&lt;text&gt;</code>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using <i>corresp</i>. The language is indicated using <i>xml:lang</i>, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the <i>corresp</i> and the tag pointed to by the <i>corresp</i> inherit the value from their immediate parent.</p>
	<pre>&lt;!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --&gt;&lt;place xml:id="LOND1"   corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1"&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;London&lt;/placeName&gt;   &lt;desc&gt;The city of London...&lt;/desc&gt; &lt;/place&gt; &lt;!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" --&gt; &lt;person xml:id="LOND2"   corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1"&gt;   &lt;persName type="lit"&gt;London&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;note&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Allegorical character representing the city of &lt;placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1"&gt;London&lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/note&gt; &lt;/person&gt; &lt;person xml:id="GENI1"   corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2"&gt;   &lt;persName type="lit"&gt;London's Genius&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;note&gt;     &lt;p&gt;Personification of London's genius. Appears as an       allegorical character in mayoral shows.     &lt;/p&gt;   &lt;/note&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
	<p>In this example, a <code>&lt;place&gt;</code> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <code>&lt;person&gt;</code> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.</p>
synch	<p>(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space</p>
sameAs	<p>points to an element that is the same as the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p>
copyOf	<p>points to an element of which the current element is a copy.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.</p>
next	<p>points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.pointer</u></p> <p><b>Note</b> It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>
prev	<p>(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p>

		<b>Status</b>	Optional
		<b>Datatype</b>	<u>teidata.pointer</u>
		<b>Note</b>	It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
	exclude		points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.
	select	<b>Status</b>	Optional
		<b>Datatype</b>	1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
			selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.
		<b>Status</b>	Optional
		<b>Datatype</b>	1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by white-space
		<b>Note</b>	This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

## 2.3.22. att.global.rendition

**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> [ <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">revisionDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">width</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>rend</b></p> <p>(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"&gt;   &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle,   &lt;lb/&gt;On Her &lt;lb/&gt;   &lt;hi rend="case(mixed)"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the <i>rend</i> attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the <i>rend</i> attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.</p> <p><b>style</b></p> <p>contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p>

	<p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <pre>&lt;head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps"&gt; &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her &lt;lb/&gt; &lt;hi style="font-variant: normal"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> Unlike the attribute values of <i>rend</i>, which uses white-space as a separator, the <i>style</i> attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.</p> <p>The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <code>&lt;styleDefDecl&gt;</code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>If <i>style</i> and <i>rendition</i> are both present on an element, then <i>style</i> overrides or complements <i>rendition</i>. <i>style</i> should not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.</p>
rendition	<p>points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <pre>&lt;head rendition="#ac #sc"&gt; &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her &lt;lb/&gt; &lt;hi rendition="#normal"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt; &lt;!-- elsewhere... --&gt; &lt;rendition xml:id="sc" scheme="css"&gt;font-variant: small-caps&lt;/rendition&gt; &lt;rendition xml:id="normal" scheme="css"&gt;font-variant: normal&lt;/rendition&gt; &lt;rendition xml:id="ac" scheme="css"&gt;text-align: center&lt;/rendition&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>rendition</i> attribute is used in a very similar way to the <i>class</i> attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.</p> <p>If <i>rendition</i> is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with <i>rend</i>. Where both <i>rendition</i> and <i>rend</i> are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.</p> <p>Each URI provided should indicate a <code>&lt;rendition&gt;</code> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the <i>scheme</i> attribute.</p>

### 2.3.23. att.global.responsibility

<p><b>att.global.responsibility</b> provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]</p>	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<p><a href="#">att.global</a>[<a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">revisionDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">width</a>]</p>



<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>resp</b> (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> To reduce the ambiguity of a <i>resp</i> pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that <i>resp</i> be used to point not to an agent (<code>&lt;person&gt;</code> or <code>&lt;org&gt;</code>) but to a <code>&lt;respStmt&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;author&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;editor&gt;</code> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <code>&lt;respStmt&gt;</code>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>Blessed are the &lt;choice&gt;   &lt;sic&gt;cheesemakers&lt;/sic&gt;   &lt;corr resp="#editor" cert="high"&gt;peacemakers&lt;/corr&gt; &lt;/choice&gt;; for they shall be called the children of God.</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;!-- in the &lt;text&gt; ... --&gt;&lt;lg&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;l&gt;Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing   sla&lt;choice&gt;     &lt;sic&gt;n&lt;/sic&gt;     &lt;corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber"&gt;u&lt;/corr&gt;   &lt;/choice&gt;es,&lt;/l&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;!-- in the &lt;teiHeader&gt; ... --&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber"&gt;   &lt;resp when="2014"&gt;Transcriber&lt;/resp&gt;   &lt;name&gt;Janelle Jenstad&lt;/name&gt; &lt;/respStmt&gt;</pre>

## 2.3.24. att.global.source

<b>att.global.source</b> provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.global</a> [ <a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">authority</a> <a href="#">availability</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">biblScope</a> <a href="#">bindingDesc</a> <a href="#">body</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">correction</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">editorialDecl</a> <a href="#">encodingDesc</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">extent</a> <a href="#">fileDesc</a> <a href="#">foliation</a> <a href="#">foreign</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">handDesc</a> <a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">height</a> <a href="#">hi</a> <a href="#">history</a> <a href="#">hyphenation</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">layout</a> <a href="#">layoutDesc</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">msIdentifier</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">normalization</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">objectDesc</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">origin</a> <a href="#">p</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">physDesc</a> <a href="#">principal</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">publicationStmt</a> <a href="#">publisher</a> <a href="#">punctuation</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">repository</a> <a href="#">resp</a> <a href="#">respStmt</a> <a href="#">revisionDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptDesc</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">sourceDesc</a> <a href="#">sponsor</a> <a href="#">supplied</a> <a href="#">support</a> <a href="#">supportDesc</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">teiHeader</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">textLang</a> <a href="#">title</a> <a href="#">titleStmt</a> <a href="#">width</a> ]
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>source</b> specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>source</i> attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <code>&lt;schemaSpec&gt;</code> or <code>&lt;moduleRef&gt;</code> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.</p> <p>On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p> <p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative</p>

	<p>URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <code>&lt;prefixDef&gt;</code>.</p> <p>If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; As Willard McCarty (&lt;bibl xml:id="mcc_2012"&gt;2012, p.2&lt;/bibl&gt;) tells us, &lt;quote source="#mcc_2012"&gt;     term.&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;quote source="#chicago_15_ed"&gt;Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the     less we seem to know.&lt;/quote&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;/p&gt; &lt;!-- ... --&gt; &lt;bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed"&gt;   &lt;title level="m"&gt;The Chicago Manual of Style&lt;/title&gt;,   &lt;edition&gt;15th edition&lt;/edition&gt;. &lt;pubPlace&gt;Chicago&lt;/pubPlace&gt;: &lt;publisher&gt;University of     Chicago Press&lt;/publisher&gt; (&lt;date&gt;2003&lt;/date&gt;), &lt;biblScope unit="page"&gt;p.147&lt;/biblScope&gt; &lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/&gt;</pre> <p>Include in the schema an element named <code>&lt;p&gt;</code> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;schemaSpec ident="myODD"   source="mycompiledODD.xml"&gt;   &lt;!-- further declarations specifying the components required --&gt; &lt;/schemaSpec&gt;</pre> <p>Create a schema using components taken from the file <code>mycompiledODD.xml</code>.</p>

### 2.3.25. att.handFeatures

<b>att.handFeatures</b> provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]											
<b>Module</b>	tei										
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">handNote</a> <a href="#">handShift</a> <a href="#">scriptNote</a>										
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <table> <tr> <td>scribe</td><td> <p>gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.name</a></p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>scribeRef</td><td> <p>points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <code>&lt;person&gt;</code> element elsewhere in the description.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>script</td><td> <p>characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i>, <i>copperplate</i>, <i>Chancery</i>, <i>Italian</i>, etc.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.name</a> separated by whitespace</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>scriptRef</td><td> <p>points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <code>&lt;scriptNote&gt;</code> element elsewhere in the description.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>medium</td><td> <p>describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i>, or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i></p> </td></tr> </table>	scribe	<p>gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.name</a></p>	scribeRef	<p>points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <code>&lt;person&gt;</code> element elsewhere in the description.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>	script	<p>characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i>, <i>copperplate</i>, <i>Chancery</i>, <i>Italian</i>, etc.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.name</a> separated by whitespace</p>	scriptRef	<p>points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <code>&lt;scriptNote&gt;</code> element elsewhere in the description.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>	medium	<p>describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i>, or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i></p>
scribe	<p>gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.name</a></p>										
scribeRef	<p>points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <code>&lt;person&gt;</code> element elsewhere in the description.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>										
script	<p>characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i>, <i>copperplate</i>, <i>Chancery</i>, <i>Italian</i>, etc.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.name</a> separated by whitespace</p>										
scriptRef	<p>points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <code>&lt;scriptNote&gt;</code> element elsewhere in the description.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by white-space</p>										
medium	<p>describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i>, or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i></p>										

	<p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.enumerated</u> separated by whitespace</p> <p>scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <u>teidata.enumerated</u></p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> <b>sole</b> only this hand is used throughout the manuscript</p> <p><b>ma-</b></p> <p><b>jor</b> this hand is used through most of the manuscript</p> <p><b>mi-</b></p> <p><b>nor</b> this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript</p>
<b>Note</b>	Usually either <i>script</i> or <i>scriptRef</i> , and similarly, either <i>scribe</i> or <i>scribeRef</i> , will be supplied.

### 2.3.26. att.internetMedia

<b>att.internetMedia</b> provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<u>ref</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>mimeType</b> (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.word</u> separated by whitespace</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>In this example <i>mimeType</i> is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.</p> <pre>&lt;ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Note</b>	This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The <i>mimeType</i> attribute must have a value taken from this list.

### 2.3.27. att.msClass

<b>att.msClass</b> provides attributes to indicate text type or classification. [10.6. Intellectual Content 10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription
<b>Members</b>	<u>msContents</u> <u>msItemStruct</u>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>class</b> identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <u>teidata.pointer</u> separated by whitespace</p>

### 2.3.28. att.msExcerpt

<b>att.msExcerpt</b> (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]	
<b>Module</b>	msdescription

<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">msContents</a> <a href="#">msItemStruct</a> <a href="#">quote</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>defective</b> indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.xTruthValue</a></p>
<b>Note</b>	In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

### 2.3.29. att.naming

<b>att.naming</b> provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms]	
<b>Module</b>	<a href="#">tei</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">att.personal</a> [ <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a> ] <a href="#">author</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">editor</a> <a href="#">pubPlace</a> <a href="#">repository</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@ref)

### 2.3.30. att.notated

<b>att.notated</b> provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.	
<b>Module</b>	<a href="#">tei</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">seg</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>notation</b> names the notation used for the content of the element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p>

### 2.3.31. att.personal

<b>att.personal</b> (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
<b>Module</b>	<a href="#">tei</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">surname</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	Attributes <a href="#">att.naming</a> ( <a href="#">att.canonical</a> (@ref))

### 2.3.32. att.placement

<b>att.placement</b> provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
<b>Module</b>	<a href="#">tei</a>
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">note</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>place</b> specifies where this item is placed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Recommended</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>top</b> at the top of the page</p>

	<p><b>bot-</b> <b>tom</b> at the foot of the page</p> <p><b>mar-</b> <b>gin</b> in the margin (left, right, or both)</p> <p><b>op-</b> <b>po-</b> on the opposite, i.e. facing, page <b>site</b></p> <p><b>over-</b> <b>leaf</b> on the other side of the leaf</p> <p><b>above</b> above the line</p> <p><b>right</b> to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure</p> <p><b>be-</b> <b>low</b> below the line</p> <p><b>left</b> to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure</p> <p><b>end</b> at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.</p> <p><b>in-</b> <b>line</b> within the body of the text.</p> <p><b>in-</b> <b>space</b> in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.</p> <pre>&lt;add place="margin"&gt;[An addition written in the margin]&lt;/add&gt; &lt;add place="bottom opposite"&gt;[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]&lt;/add&gt; &lt;note place="bottom"&gt;Ibid, p.7&lt;/note&gt;</pre>
--	---

### 2.3.33. att.pointing

<b>att.pointing</b> provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">licence</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">ref</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>target</b> specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1–# occurrences of <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a> separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.</p>

### 2.3.34. att.ranging

<b>att.ranging</b> provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.	
<b>Module</b>	tei

<b>Members</b>	<code>att.dimensions[date height origDate supplied width]</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>atLeast</b> gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> <p><b>atMost</b> gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> <p><b>min</b> where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> <p><b>max</b> where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.numeric</a></p> <p><b>confidence</b> specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i>, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.probability</a></p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from &lt;del rend="overstrike"&gt; &lt;gap reason="illegible"   extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/&gt; &lt;/del&gt; Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.</pre>

### 2.3.35. att.sortable

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

<b>Module</b>	<code>tei</code>
<b>Members</b>	<code>bibl idno listBibl msDesc</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>sortKey</b> supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.  <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.word</a></p> <pre>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen &lt;index indexName="NAMES"&gt;   &lt;term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen"&gt;Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya&lt;/term&gt; &lt;/index&gt; b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent</p> <p>Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for <i>4-H</i> will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and <i>McCoy</i> may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while <i>A1</i>, <i>A4</i>, and <i>A5</i> may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.</p>

## 2.3.36. att.spanning

<b>att.spanning</b> provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">pb</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>spanTo</b> indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.pointer</a></p> <p><b>Schematron</b> The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element  <pre>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]"&gt;The element indicated by @spanTo (&lt;sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/&gt;) must follow the current element &lt;sch:name/&gt; &lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</pre></p>
<b>Note</b>	The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the <i>spanTo</i> attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

## 2.3.37. att.typed

<b>att.typed</b> provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<a href="#">TEI</a> <a href="#">ab</a> <a href="#">altIdentifier</a> <a href="#">bibl</a> <a href="#">cb</a> <a href="#">change</a> <a href="#">country</a> <a href="#">date</a> <a href="#">explicit</a> <a href="#">forename</a> <a href="#">fw</a> <a href="#">gloss</a> <a href="#">head</a> <a href="#">idno</a> <a href="#">incipit</a> <a href="#">lb</a> <a href="#">listBibl</a> <a href="#">locus</a> <a href="#">milestone</a> <a href="#">msDesc</a> <a href="#">name</a> <a href="#">note</a> <a href="#">orgName</a> <a href="#">origDate</a> <a href="#">pb</a> <a href="#">persName</a> <a href="#">provenance</a> <a href="#">quote</a> <a href="#">ref</a> <a href="#">seg</a> <a href="#">surname</a> <a href="#">text</a> <a href="#">title</a>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>type</b> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.enumerated</a></p> <pre>&lt;div type="verse"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Night in Tarras&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;lg type="stanza"&gt;     &lt;l&gt;At evening tramping on the hot white road&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;...&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/lg&gt;   &lt;lg type="stanza"&gt;     &lt;l&gt;A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;...&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/lg&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>type</i> attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of <b>att.typed</b>, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p>

<b>Schematron</b>	<code>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test="@type"&gt;The &lt;sch:name/&gt; element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <code>&lt;valList&gt;</code> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

## 2.3.38. att.written

<b>att.written</b> provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<code>ab fw head hi note p seg text</code>
<b>Attributes</b>	<p>Attributes</p> <p><b>hand</b> points to a <code>&lt;handNote&gt;</code> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <code>teidata.pointer</code></p>

## 2.4. Macros

### 2.4.1. macro paraContent

<b>macro paraContent</b> (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<code>ab hi p ref seg supplied title</code>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="lg"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.lLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro paraContent = (   text     model.gLike     model.phrase     model.inter     model.global     lg     model.lLike )* </pre>

### 2.4.2. macro phraseSeq

<b>macro phraseSeq</b> (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<code>author biblScope country editor explicit extent foreign forename fw gloss incipit name orgName persName pubPlace publisher surname textLang</code>



<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.attributable"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.phraseSeq =   ( text   model.gLike   model.attributable   model.phrase   model.global ) * </pre>

### 2.4.3. macro.phraseSeq.limited

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>authority</u> <u>principal</u> <u>repository</u> <u>resp</u> <u>sponsor</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text   model.limitedPhrase   model.global ) * </pre>

### 2.4.4. macro.specialPara

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>change</u> <u>foliation</u> <u>handNote</u> <u>layout</u> <u>licence</u> <u>note</u> <u>origin</u> <u>provenance</u> <u>quote</u> <u>scriptNote</u> <u>support</u>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.phrase"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.inter"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.divPart"/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.global"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> macro.specialPara =   (     text       model.gLike       model.phrase       model.inter       model.divPart       model.global   ) * </pre>

### 2.4.5. macro.xtext

**macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<u>height</u> <u>width</u>

<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate minOccurs="0"     maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;     &lt;textNode/&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.gLike"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>macro.xtext = ( text   model.gLike )*</pre>

## 2.5. Datatypes

### 2.5.1. teidata.certainty

<b>teidata.certainty</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;valList type="closed"&gt;     &lt;valItem ident="high"/&gt;     &lt;valItem ident="medium"/&gt;     &lt;valItem ident="low"/&gt;     &lt;valItem ident="unknown"/&gt;   &lt;/valList&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.certainty = "high"   "medium"   "low"   "unknown"</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

### 2.5.2. teidata.count

<b>teidata.count</b> defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">handDesc/@hands</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">layout/@writtenLines</a></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

### 2.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

<b>teidata.duration.iso</b> defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-] +"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	

	<code>teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;time dur-iso="PT0,75H"&gt;three-quarters of an hour&lt;/time&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date dur-iso="P1,5D"&gt;a day and a half&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date dur-iso="P14D"&gt;a fortnight&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;time dur-iso="PT0.02S"&gt;20 ms&lt;/time&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see ISO 8601 <i>Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times</i>.</p>

## 2.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

<b>teidata.duration.w3c</b> defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="duration"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<code>teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;time dur="PT45M"&gt;forty-five minutes&lt;/time&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date dur="P1DT12H"&gt;a day and a half&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;date dur="P7D"&gt;a week&lt;/date&gt;</code>
<b>Example</b>	<code>&lt;time dur="PT0.02S"&gt;20 ms&lt;/time&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see the W3C specification.</p>

## 2.5.5. teidata.enumerated

<b>teidata.enumerated</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">availability</a>/<a href="#">@status</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">bibl</a>/<a href="#">@type</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">biblScope</a>/<a href="#">@unit</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">fw</a>/<a href="#">@type</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">height</a>/<a href="#">@unit</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">idno</a>/<a href="#">@type</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">lb</a>/<a href="#">@type</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">milestone</a>/<a href="#">@unit</a></li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>normalization</u>/@method</li> <li>• <u>note</u>/@type</li> <li>• <u>objectDesc</u>/@form</li> <li>• <u>punctuation</u>/@marks</li> <li>• <u>seg</u>/@type</li> <li>• <u>title</u>/@level</li> <li>• <u>width</u>/@unit</li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef key="teidata.word"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.enumerated = teidata.word</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.</p> <p>Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <code>&lt;valList&gt;</code> element.</p>

## 2.5.6. teidata.language

<b>teidata.language</b> defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>textLang</u>/@mainLang</li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="language"/&gt;     &lt;valList&gt;       &lt;valItem ident=""/&gt;     &lt;/valList&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.language = xsd:language   ( " " )</pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.</p> <p>A 'language tag', per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or <i>subtags</i> separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.</p> <p><b>language</b></p> <p>The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <a href="http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry">http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry</a>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.</p> <p><b>script</b></p> <p>The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <a href="http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html">http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html</a>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.</p> <p><b>region</b></p> <p>Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched</p>

	<p>or browsed at <a href="https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/">https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/</a>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <a href="http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm">http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm</a>.</p>
<b>variant</b>	An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.
<b>extension</b>	An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.
<b>private use</b>	<p>An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter <i>x</i> (i.e., starts with <i>x-</i>) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element must be present in the TEI header.</p> <p>There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.</p> <p>Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with <i>x-</i>, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <code>&lt;language&gt;</code> element in the TEI header.</p> <p>Examples include</p> <p><b>sn</b> Shona</p> <p><b>zh-TW</b> Taiwanese</p> <p><b>zh-Hant-HK</b> Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong</p> <p><b>en-SL</b> English as spoken in Sierra Leone</p> <p><b>pl</b> Polish</p> <p><b>es-MX</b> Spanish as spoken in Mexico</p> <p><b>es-419</b> Spanish as spoken in Latin America</p> <p>The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.</p>

## 2.5.7. teidata.name

<b>teidata.name</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="Name"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre>teidata.name = xsd:Name</pre>
<b>Note</b>	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name">http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name</a> ): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

## 2.5.8. teidata.numeric

<b>teidata.numeric</b> defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.
---

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="double"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction="(\-?[0-9]+\-?[0-9]+)"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="decimal"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.numeric =   xsd:double   token { pattern = "(\-?[0-9]+\-?[0-9]+)" }   xsd:decimal </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.</p> <p>To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.</p> <p>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.</p>

### 2.5.9. teidata.pattern

<b>teidata.pattern</b> defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.pattern = token </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>A regular expression, often called a <i>pattern</i>, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings <i>Handel</i>, <i>Händel</i>, and <i>Haendel</i> can be described by the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern <code>H(ä ae?)ndel</code> <i>matches</i> each of the three strings)</p> <p>Wikipedia This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.</p>

### 2.5.10. teidata.point

<b>teidata.point</b> defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction="(\-?[0-9]+\(\. [0-9]+\)?, \-?[0-9]+\(\. [0-9]+\)?)"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.point = token { pattern = "(\-?[0-9]+\(\. [0-9]+\)?, \-?[0-9]+\(\. [0-9]+\)?)" } </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;facsimile&gt;   &lt;surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280"&gt;     &lt;zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234"&gt;       &lt;graphic url="handwriting.png" /&gt;     &lt;/zone&gt;   &lt;/surface&gt; </pre>

	<code>&lt;/facsimile&gt;</code>
<b>Note</b>	A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

### 2.5.11. teidata.pointer

<b>teidata.pointer</b> defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>fw/@resp</code></li> <li>• <code>handShift/@new</code></li> <li>• <code>milestone/@resp</code></li> <li>• <code>ref/@resp</code></li> </ul>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="anyURI"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<code>teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI</code>
<b>Note</b>	The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 <i>Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax</i> . Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 <i>Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs</i> . For example, <code>https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%</code> is encoded as <code>https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25</code> while <code>http://-mr---nx.mirbg4--n###.#####-#####.####/</code> is encoded as <code>http://ckbbaj1c6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/</code>

### 2.5.12. teidata.probability

<b>teidata.probability</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="double"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<code>teidata.probability = xsd:double</code>
<b>Note</b>	Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing <i>certainly false</i> and 1 representing <i>certainly true</i> .

### 2.5.13. teidata.replacement

<b>teidata.replacement</b> defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<code>teidata.replacement = text</code>

### 2.5.14. teidata.temporal.iso

<b>teidata.temporal.iso</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard <i>Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times</i> .	
--	--

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="date"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYear"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYearMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonthDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="time"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="dateTime"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="token"       restriction=" [0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.temporal.iso =   xsd:date   xsd:gYear   xsd:gMonth   xsd:gDay   xsd:gYearMonth   xsd:gMonthDay   xsd:time   xsd:dateTime   token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+" } </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the <code>dateTime</code> representation should be used.</p> <p>For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a <i>basic</i> and an <i>extended</i> format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.</p> <p>While ISO 8601 permits the use of both <code>00:00</code> and <code>24:00</code> to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of <code>24:00</code>.</p>

### 2.5.15. teidata.temporal.w3c

<b>teidata.temporal.w3c</b> defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i> specification.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="date"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYear"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gYearMonth"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="gMonthDay"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="time"/&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="dateTime"/&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.temporal.w3c =   xsd:date   xsd:gYear   xsd:gMonth   xsd:gDay   xsd:gYearMonth   xsd:gMonthDay   xsd:time   xsd:dateTime </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the <code>dateTime</code> representation should be used.</p>

### 2.5.16. teidata.text

<b>teidata.text</b> defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.	
<b>Module</b>	tei



Used by	
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="string"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.text = string</pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

## 2.5.17. teidata.truthValue

<b>teidata.truthValue</b> defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="boolean"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean</pre>
Note	<p>The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.</p> <p>This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: <b>teidata.xTruthValue</b>.</p>

## 2.5.18. teidata.versionNumber

<b>teidata.versionNumber</b> defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction=" [\d]+[a-z]* [\d]* (\. [\d]+[a-z]* [\d]*) {0,3}"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.versionNumber =   token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]* [\d]* (\. [\d]+[a-z]* [\d]*) {0,3}" }</pre>

## 2.5.19. teidata.word

<b>teidata.word</b> defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.	
Module	tei
Used by	<p><b>teidata.enumeratedElement:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>locus</u>/@from</li> <li>• <u>locus</u>/@to</li> <li>• <u>supplied</u>/@reason</li> </ul>
Content model	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;dataRef name="token"     restriction=" [^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }</pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

## 2.5.20. teidata.xTruthValue

<b>teidata.xTruthValue</b> (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;alternate&gt;     &lt;dataRef name="boolean"/&gt;     &lt;valList&gt;       &lt;valItem ident="unknown"/&gt;       &lt;valItem ident="inapplicable"/&gt;     &lt;/valList&gt;   &lt;/alternate&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean   ( "unknown"   "inapplicable" ) </pre>
<b>Note</b>	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

## 2.5.21. teidata.xpath

<b>teidata.xpath</b> defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.	
<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;textNode/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Declaration</b>	<pre> teidata.xpath = text </pre>
<b>Note</b>	<p>Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2..</p> <p>When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.</p>